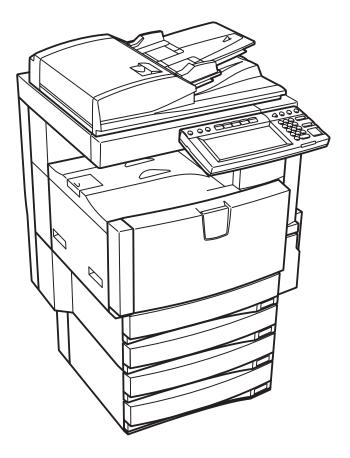
# TOSHIBA

# Operator's Manual for Basic Functions

# e-studio2500c/3500c/3510c





# EPA ENERGY STAR ® (MFD)

The United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has introduced a voluntary programme, the ENERGY STAR programme, to encourage the widespread and voluntary use of energy-efficient technologies that enhance the workplace, improve product performance and prevent pollution. As an ENERGY STAR Partner, the TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION has determined that this copier model meets the ENERGY STAR guidelines for energy efficiency.

ENERGY STAR guidelines for this class of copier require ENERGY STAR copiers to have a 'Sleep Mode' feature that automatically makes the copier enter the sleep mode after a period of inactivity. The copier must also automatically change to a 'Low Power Mode' (Automatic Energy Save) after a period of time since the last usage. Specifically, this copier complies with the following requirements.

### ♦ e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c

### 'Automatic Energy Save'-

The copier consumes less than 184 W (e-STUDIO2500c/3500c)/223 W (e-STUDIO3510c) during Energy Save.

### 'Automatic Energy Save' Default Time-

The default time for the 'Automatic Energy Save' is 15 minutes.

### 'Sleep Mode'

The copier consumes less than 80 W (e-STUDIO2500c/3500c)/95 W (e-STUDIO3510c) in the 'Sleep Mode'.

## 'Sleep Mode' Default Time-

The default time for the 'Sleep Mode' is 60 minutes (e-STUDIO2500c/3500c)/90 minutes (e-STUDIO3510c).

- **Note1-** The default setting for the 'Sleep Mode' and 'Automatic Energy Save' can be changed. Contact your service representative to change the default settings noted above.
- **Note2-** If the Fax or printer data is received in the sleep mode, the copier starts warming itself up and prints out the data when it becomes ready. Also, when the start button or the energy saver button on the control panel is pressed, the copier starts warming itself up.

In accordance with EPA ENERGY STAR programme guidelines, Toshiba recommends the following recycled paper.

Great White MultiUse 20 paper

If you have any questions regarding the use of recycled paper or some recommended types of recycled paper, please contact your authorized Toshiba dealer.

ENERGY STAR is a U.S. registered mark.

After a suitable place has been selected for the installation of the e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c, please do not change it. Avoid excessive heat, dust, vibration and direct sunlight. Also, provide proper ventilation as the copier emits a small amount of ozone.

The unit is classified as Class 1 Laser Product according to IEC 60825-1:1993/EN 60825-1.1994 including amendments.

The unit uses laser diode of output 25 mW, wave length 790 nm, continuous pulse.

### For EU only

### Warning:

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### Working environment

From EMC (Electromagnetic Compatibility) point of view, the operation of this product is being restricted in following environments:

- Medical Environments: This product is not certified as a medical product according to the Medical Product Directive 93/42/EEC.
- Domestic environments (e.g. a private living room with TV / Radio sets in the nearby surrounding area) because this is a so called EMC class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures!

Any consequences resulting from the use of this product in restricted working environments are not the responsibility of TOSHIBA TEC.

The consequences of the use of this product in restricted working environments may be an electromagnetic interference with other devices or machines in the nearby surrounding area. This can result into malfunction including data loss / data error pertaining to this product or the other devices / machines involved in the electromagnetic interference.

Furthermore, for general safety reasons, the use of this product in environments with explosive atmospheres is not permitted.

### **CE** compliance

This product is labelled with the CE mark in accordance with the provisions of the applicable European Directives, notably the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC and the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive 2004/108/EEC for this product and the electric accessories, the Radio Equipment and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 99/5/EEC for the telecommunication accessories. CE marking is the responsibility of TOSHIBA TEC GERMANY IMAGING SYSTEMS GmbH. Carl-

Schurz-Str. 7, 41460 Neuss, Germany, phone +49-(0)-2131-1245-0.

For a copy of the related CE Declaration of Conformity please contact your dealer or TOSHIBA TEC.

### For Germany only

### **Machine Noise Information**

Ordinance 3. GPSGV: The maximum sound pressure level is equal or less than 70 dB(A) according to EN ISO 7779

Following information is for EU-member states only:



This product is marked according to the requirement in EU-Directive 2002/96/EC. (Directive on Waste electrical and electronic equipment - WEEE)

The use of the symbol indicates that this product may not be disposed as unsorted municipal waste and has to be collected separately. By ensuring this product is disposed of correctly, you will help prevent potential negative consequences for the environment and human health, which could otherwise be caused by inappropriate waste handling of this product.

For more detailed information about the take-back and recycling of this product please contact your supplier where you purchased the product. Thank you for purchasing the TOSHIBA multifunctional digital colour systems e-STUDIO2500c/ 3500c/3510c.

We have provided you with these manuals for the operation of this equipment. Select and read the manual best suited to your needs.



## Quick Start Guide

This Quick Start Guide describes the initial setup method of this equipment and accessories of this product such as operator's manuals and CD-ROMs.





# **Operator's Manual for Basic Functions**

This Operator's Manual Basic Functions describes how to use the basic functions of this equipment mainly focusing on the copying function. Also this manual contains safety precautions for users to be observed. Be sure to read it first carefully.



# **User Functions Guide**

This User Functions Guide describes the functions and settings under the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel of this equipment.



# **Colour Guide**

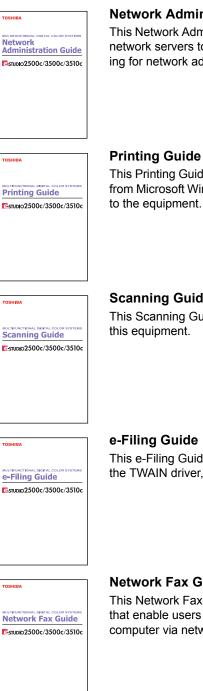
This colour Guide simply explains the functions such as "copy density adjustment", "colour adjustment", "copy editing", "image editing" and "image processing" in colour. This guide also includes the basic knowledge of colour.

## Other guides are provided by the User Documentation CD-ROM in PDF files:



# TopAccess Guide

This TopAccess Guide explains how to operate and set up the network functions such as the network scanning function and job management, using the TopAccess (Web-based utility) from client computers.



# **Network Administration Guide**

This Network Administration Guide explains the guidelines for setting up network servers to provide various network services, and troubleshooting for network administrators.

This Printing Guide explains how to install the client software for printing from Microsoft Windows, Apple Mac OS, and UNIX computers, and print to the equipment.

# Scanning Guide

This Scanning Guide explains how to operate the scanning function of

This e-Filing Guide explains how to operate the e-Filing function using the TWAIN driver, File Downloader and e-Filing web utility.



# **Network Fax Guide**

This Network Fax Guide explains how to use the network fax function that enable users to operate fax and internet fax sending from a client computer via network.



## **User Management Guide**

This User Management Guide describes how to manage this equipment using the functions of "Department Management", "User Management Setting" and "User Authentication for Scan to E-mail".

# To read manuals in PDF (Portable Document Format) files

Viewing and printing this operator's manual in PDF files require that you install Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat Reader on your PC. If Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat Reader is not installed on your PC, download and install it from the website of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

# **Before Reading This Manual**

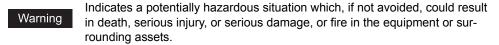
This operator's manual describes the following:

- How to use this equipment
- · How to inspect and carry out maintenance on this equipment
- · How to remedy mechanical and copying problems

# Precautions in this manual

To ensure correct and safe use of this equipment, this operator's manual describes safety precautions according to the three levels shown below.

You should fully understand the meaning and importance of these items before reading this manual.



Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury, partial damage of the equipment or surrounding assets, or loss of data.

```
Note
```

Caution

Indicates a procedure you should follow to ensure the optimal performance of the equipment and problem-free copying.

Other than the above, this manual also describes information that may be useful for the operation of this equipment with the following signage:

Tip

Describes handy information that is useful to know when operating the equipment.

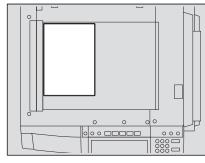


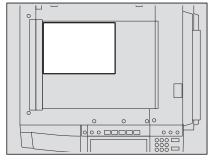
Pages describing items related to what you are currently doing. See these pages as required.

# Description of original/paper direction

Paper or originals of A4 and B5 size can be placed either in a portrait direction or in a landscape direction. In this manual, "-R" is added to this paper size when this size of paper or original is placed in a landscape direction.

e.g.) A4 size original on the original glass





Placed in a portrait direction: A4

Placed in a landscape direction: A4-R

Paper or originals of A3 or B4 size can only be placed in a landscape direction, therefore "-R" is not added to these sizes.

# Trademarks

- Microsoft and Windows are the trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Adobe, Adobe Acrobat, Adobe Reader and Adobe Acrobat Reader are the trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Other company or product names shown in this manual may be a brand name or a trademark of each company.

©2006 TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION All rights reserved

Under the copyright laws, this manual cannot be reproduced in any form without prior written permission of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION. No patent liability is assumed, however, with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

# CONTENTS

Notice to Users	1
Lineup of Our Manuals	3
Before Reading This Manual	6
TOSHIBA Quality is Second to None	17
Features of the e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c	19
General Precautions	21
Disclaimer Notice	27
Forgery Prevention Function/Storage of Colour Copies	28

# Chapter 1 BEFORE USING EQUIPMENT

Description of Each Component	
Main components	
Configuration of options	34
Control panel	
Adjustment of the angle of the control panel	
Touch panel	41
Preparation 1- Turning Power On/Off	45
Turning power on	
When department or user management is used	46
Preparation 2- Turning power off (Shutdown)	
Turning power off (Shutdown)	
Preparation 3- Setting Copy Paper	
Acceptable copy paper	54
Setting copy paper (size change)	
Changing the setting of paper size	61
Drawer for special uses	62
Placing paper in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	65

# Chapter 2 HOW TO MAKE COPIES

Setting Originals Acceptable originals Placing originals on the glass Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)	68 70
Making Copies	76
Initial (Default) settings	76
Copying procedure	77
Scanning the next originals during copying (Auto job start)	82
(Interrupt copying)	84

Bypass Copying	85
Bypass copying	
Bypass copying on standard size paper	
Bypass copying on non-standard size paper	
Proof Copy	95

# Chapter 3 SETTING OF BASIC COPY MODES

Paper Selection	98
Automatic Paper Selection (APS)	98
Manual paper selection	
Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original si	ze)101
Switching Colour Mode	103
Enlargement and Reduction Copying	104
Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS)	104
Specifying both original size and copy size separately	
Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons	108
Selecting Finishing Modes	
Type of finishing mode	110
Name of each part in the Finisher (optional)	
Sort/Group copying	112
Rotate sort mode	114
Staple sort mode	
Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)	
Hole punch mode (optional)	
Manual stapling (MJ-1101 only)	
Duplex Copying	125
1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)	
1-sided original -> 2-sided copy	
2-sided original -> 2-sided copy	
2-sided original -> 1-sided copy	
Book-type original -> 2-sided copy	
Original Mode	134
Copy Density Adjustment	136
Automatic copy density mode	136
Manual copy density mode	137

# Chapter 4 IMAGE ADJUSTMENT

Colour Balance (YMCK Adjustment)	140
RGB Adjustment	142
One-Touch Adjustment	143

Background Adjustment	
Sharpness	145
Twin Colour (2-Colour) Copy	
TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE	
RED & BLACK	
Monocolour copying	
Hue	153
Saturation	154

# Chapter 5 USING THE EDITING FUNCTIONS

IMAGE SHIFT	.157
Creating a right or left margin	.157
Creating a top or bottom margin	
Creating a bookbinding margin	
EDGE ERASE	.163
BOOK CENTRE ERASE	.164
DUAL PAGE	.166
2IN1 / 4IN1	.168
MAGAZINE SORT	.171
EDITING	.173
Trimming / Masking	.173
Mirror image	
Negative/Positive reversal	.177
XY ZOOM	.178
COVER SHEET	.180
SHEET INSERTION	.183
TIME STAMP	.186
PAGE NUMBER	.187
JOB BUILD	.189
IMAGE DIRECTION	.193
BOOK - TABLET	.195
ADF / SADF	.196
Continuous feed mode	.196
Single feed mode	. 197
FULL IMAGE	.199

# Chapter 6 e-FILING

e-Filing	202
Creating User Boxes	204
Changing Data of User Boxes	206
Deleting User Boxes	209
Storing Documents in e-Filing	211
Printing Stored Documents	216
Printing the whole document	
Test printing	218
Printing the stored document after changing the settings	219
Deleting Folders or Documents	221
Appendix	223
Storing documents in the shared folder	

# Chapter 7 TEMPLATE

Template	228
Template in "Useful Template"	
Registering User Groups and Templates	230
Registering a template in the public template group	230
Registering the new user group	235
Registering a template in the user group	238
Changing Data of User Groups and Templates	243
Changing the data of a user group	243
Changing the data of a template	246
Recalling Templates	251
When recalling a template in a public group	251
When recalling a template in a user group	
Deleting User Groups or Templates	256
Deleting a user group	256
Deleting a template	

# Chapter 8 JOB STATUS

Job Status	
Confirming Print Job Status	
Print jobs	
Proof print jobs	
Private print jobs	270

When using department codes	275
Confirming Scan Job Status	278
Log List	279
Confirming job history in log list	
Registering into address book from log lists	
Printing journals (send/receive log list)	
Print Status Display	
Releasing print job errors	
Error Code	290

# Chapter 9 BLINKING GRAPHIC SYMBOLS

Blinking Graphic Symbols	300
Drawer Display on the Touch Panel	301
Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol	302
Recommendation for original toner	303
Replacing the toner cartridge	304
Cleaning the slit glasses	305
Cleaning the chargers	308
Replace Toner Bag Symbol	309
Jam Symbols	311
Misfeed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)	
Misfeed in drawer feeding area	
Misfeed in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	315
Misfeed in the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional)	316
Misfeed on the bypass tray	316
Misfeed in the automatic duplexing unit	317
Misfeed in the jam releasing cover	318
Misfeed in the fuser unit	319
Misfeed in the Bridge Unit (optional)	322
Misfeed in the Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit	
(optional: MJ-1101, MJ-6101)	323
Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit	
(optional: MJ-1030, MJ-6004)	328
Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Unit (optional)	330
Call Service Symbol	333

# Chapter 10 WHEN THIS MESSAGE APPEARS

"Toner near Empty"		
"Time for Slit glass a	nd Main charger cleaning"	

Cleaning the slit glass Cleaning the chargers	
<b>"Check staple cartridge"</b> Finisher (optional: MJ-1101) Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)	344
"Check staple cartridge in the Saddle Stitch Unit"	348
"Examine stapler" Finisher (optional: MJ-1101) Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)	350 352
"READY (CHECK STAPLER)"	354
"Examine stapler in the Saddle Stitch Unit"	355
"READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)"	358
"READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)" Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101, MJ-6004)	
"POWER FAILURE"	360
"Time for periodic maintenance"	361
"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N" During copying (using a drawer) During copying (using the bypass tray) During printing from the FAX or Printer (using a drawer) During printing from the Printer (using the bypass tray)	362 365 366
"Cannot print this paper size Select the other drawer"	370
"Cannot print this paper type Set the other paper type"	371
"Reboot the machine"	372

# Chapter 11 MAINTENANCE

Daily Inspection	374
Simple Troubleshooting	375
Equipment does not start	375
Paper jamming occurs frequently	375
Display does not change when buttons or icons are pressed	375
Functions cannot be set	376
Image density is too low	376
Image density is too high	376
Image trouble	376

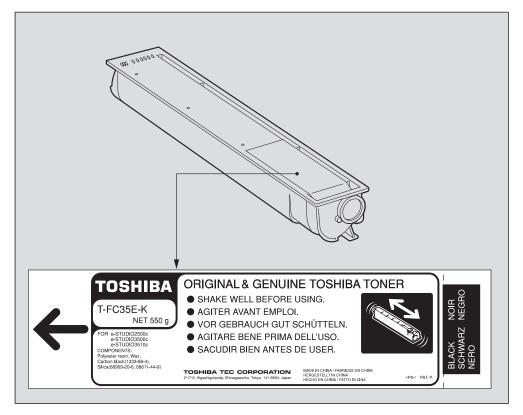
# Chapter 12 SPECIFICATIONS & OPTIONS

e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c S	pecifications
-----------------------------	---------------

	Specifications of Options	
	Packing List	
	Copying Function Combination Matrix	
	Combination Matrix 1/2	
	Combination Matrix 2/2	
	Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix	
	Combination Matrix 1/2	
	Combination Matrix 2/2	
INDEX		

e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c Toner Cartridges.

It is recommended that genuine TOSHIBA supplies and parts be used to obtain optimum results.



# Supplies / Parts

# • Dependability

Genuine Toshiba supplies are subjected to the strictest of inspections so that every supply you receive will perform at optimal levels.

# High Productivity Genuine Toshiba supplies are created to meet the demands of our competitive world and provide highspeed reliable copies when you need them.

# Stable Image Quality

Genuine Toshiba supplies are designed to provide consistently stable image output.

# Copier Kind

Genuine Toshiba supplies are designed to keep the copier and all its parts in trouble-free working order.

Reduction of machine wear is due to Toshiba's intimate knowledge of the copier's characteristics ensuring the highest standard of care.

## Machine Balance

From the beginning Toshiba supplies and machines were made for each other. Whenever Toshiba designs a new machine, it also designs a new toner that is made just for that machine. By using Genuine Toshiba supplies with Toshiba copiers, you are guaranteed optimum performance.

# Toner

# Optimum Image Quality

Toshiba toner is manufactured using ultra-fine quality materials under precisely controlled conditions to ensure that your Toshiba copiers will continually generate sharp high-quality images.

# Cost Advantage

Genuine Toshiba toner provides value. Only the proper amount of toner is used during the reproduction process thereby enabling the machine to continue to operate until all the toner has been used. In this way you get the full value from each cartridge used.

# Environmental Harmony

Genuine Toshiba toner is manufactured with the environment in mind. To care for Mother Earth, we use embossed or plastic labels making our toner cartridge fully recyclable. In addition, dust and ozone levels have been reduced to improve the working environment.

# User Friendly

Before approving our toners for sale, we test them to be sure that they pass the strictest of health standards. This takes the worry out of handling the toner.

# General

# Service and Support Benefits

Toshiba's Service technicians are certified to keep your copier performing at optimum levels. To ensure continuous image quality, utilize an authorized Toshiba Service provider to care for and perform periodical maintenance on your copier. The e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c is a Multifunctional Digital Colour System with high speed and high image quality. The e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c is equipped with the network function such as the printing and scanning one for comprehensive use to meet the needs of your office. The e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c also provides superior cost performance for black-and-white copying and high colour reproduction and fine colour adjustment for colour copying so that you can make copies as expected.

The e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c offers the following convenient features, functions and options.

- The copying speed is as follows.
  - e-STUDIO2500c

colour<sup>\*1</sup>: 25 copies per minute, Black-and-white: 35 copies per minute e-STUDIO3500c

- colour<sup>\*1</sup>: 35 copies per minute, Black-and-white: 35 copies per minute
- e-STUDIO3510c

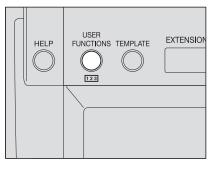
colour<sup>\*1</sup>: 35 copies per minute, Black-and-white: 45 copies per minute (when 1-sided LT landscape continuous copying is performed in the non-sort mode without the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder being used)

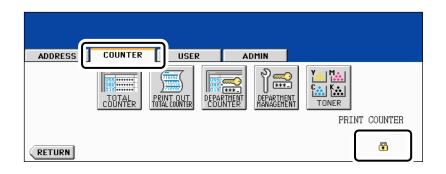
- Warm-up time has been drastically shortened to approximately 99 seconds <sup>\*2</sup>.
- An all-in-one controller, as standard equipment, is installed to perform the effective network functions.
- A 1/2 VGA wide panel improves operability and efficiency, and makes the viewing easier.
- A universal design is adopted for the control panel whose angle can be changed.
- Frequently used document styles can be stored in e-Filing in this equipment. You can easily print the file in a specified style by recalling the saved style using the touch panel, or reorder pages in the file as desired using TopAccess. Namely, one file saved in the e-Filing can be repeatedly utilized and thus your workload is reduced.
- Received Fax documents can be stored in e-Filing without printing them.
- Scanned originals can be sent via Fax (optional) and E-mail simultaneously.
- · Electronic sorting improves both colour and black-and-white copying productivity.
- Comes with rich editing functions such as trimming, masking and mirror.
- Supporting High-compression PDF makes data handling smoother.
- Loading the page memory and hard disc as standard equipment enables 2in1 / 4in1, Electronic sorting and magazine sorting, etc.
- A fixing system that uses less oil reduces the amount adhering to the paper.
- By simply replacing the cartridge, you can add toner without dirtying your hands.
- A wide variety of media from thick paper (up to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>), sticker labels, overhead transparencies, waterproof paper, etc. is acceptable.
- The image quality technology offers successive stable copy images.
- Installing an optional finisher offers quick automatic sorting, stapling and hole punching (optional) of copies.
- Installing a finisher with an optional saddle stitching function attached allows you to select the saddle stitching mode which will automatically staple the centre of the documents just like a book.
- Two energy-saving features are available: 1. ENERGY SAVER MODE: Unnecessary electricity at READY status is cut off, 2. SLEEP MODE: The minimum power consumption is kept if the equipment is not used for a specified period.
- Improved security-related features <sup>\*3</sup> ensure users of a safe and pleasant working environment.
- The built-in wireless LAN unit and Bluetooth-compliant options are introduced to respond to users' wide-ranging needs.
- \*1 Copying speed of "Full colour", "Auto colour", "Twin colour" and "Mono colour"
- \*2 Options not installed

\*3 An icon 🚯 appears on the touch panel when the encryption function is enabled on this equipment. < How to check active status of encryption function >

Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel, and then click the [COUNTER] tab on the touch panel. This icon appears at the right bottom of the touch panel if the encryption function is enabled.

Contact your service technician for the use of the encryption function.





# When installing or moving

# Warning

 This Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems requires 220 to 240 V AC, 8 A 50/60 Hz electric power.

Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified.

Avoid multiple connections in the same outlet. This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock. If you are considering increasing the number of outlets, contact an electrician.

- Always connect this Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems to an outlet with an earth connection to avoid the danger of fire or electric shock in case of short-circuiting. Contact your service representative for the details. Be sure to use a 3-conductor, grounded wall outlet. In areas, except U.S. and Canada, where a 2-pin plug is used, the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems must be grounded for safety. Never ground it to a gas pipe, a water pipe, or any other object not suitable for grounding.
- Plug the power cord securely into the outlet. If it is not plugged in properly, it could heat up and cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- Do not damage, break or attempt to repair the power cord. The following things should not be done to the power cord.
  - Twisting it
  - Bending it
  - Pulling it
  - Placing anything on it
  - Making it hot
  - Situating it near radiators or other heat sources

This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock. If the power cord is damaged, contact your service representative.

- When removing the plug from the outlet, do not pull the power cord. Always hold the plug when removing it from the outlet. If the power cord is pulled, the wires may become broken and this could cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- Make sure that the ventilation holes are not blocked up.
- If the temperature within the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems becomes too high, a fire could result.
- Do not move the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems to another building, up and down the stairs or for any great distance.

This could cause an injury or give you and electric shock. When lifting or moving the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems, contact your service representative.

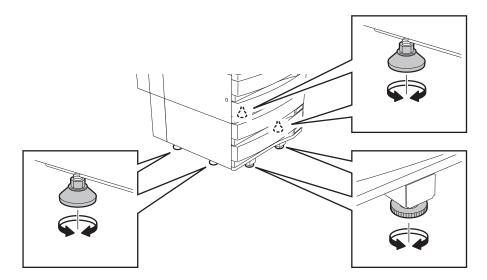
• Do not move the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems with optional equipment, such as the finisher, attached.

This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock. When lifting or moving the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems, contact your service representative.

- When moving the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems, be sure to shut down the power prior to pulling out the plug from the outlet. If the power cord is damaged, this could cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- The socket outlet shall be near the equipment and be easily accessible.
- Pull out the plug from the outlet more than once a year to clean around the prongs. Accumulating dust and dirt could cause a fire due to the heat released by electric leakage.

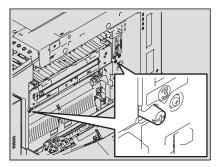
# Caution

The Paper Feed Pedestal (optional) has 4 antiskid devices and 2 fall-preventing stoppers under its bottom. When moving this equipment, turn them in the direction of arrows (see figures below) and raise them to unfix the equipment. After it has been moved, be sure to turn them in the opposite direction and lower them to fix it.



## Warning

- Do not install the equipment by yourself or try to move it once it has been installed. This could result in an injury or damage to the device. Contact your service representative if the equipment needs to be installed or moved.
- Do not remove these screws. The fuser unit could fall over and injure someone.

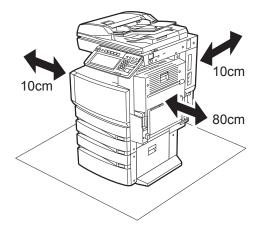


# Other points

• Make sure that there is enough space around the system to facilitate changing of parts, maintenance and clearing paper jam.

If there is insufficient space, some operations, such as bypass feeding, will become difficult and the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems could even break down.

To insure optimal operation, allow clearances of at least 80 cm on the right, and 10 cm on the left and behind.



- · Be sure to fix the power cable securely so that no one trips over it.
- Adverse environmental conditions may affect the safe operation and performance of the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems, and the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems could break down.
  - Avoid locations near windows or with exposure to direct sunlight.
  - Avoid locations with drastic temperature fluctuations.
  - Avoid too much dust.
  - Avoid location that suffer from vibration.
- Allow the air to flow freely and make sure there is a ventilator.
   With inadequate ventilation, the unpleasant odor released by ozone will begin to dominate the atmosphere.

# When using the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems

# Warning

- Do not place metallic objects or containers with water (flower vases, coffee cups, etc.) on or near the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems. And keep paper clips and staples away from the air vent. This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock.
- If the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems becomes excessively hot, smoke comes out of it
  or there is an odd smell or noise, proceed as follows.
  Turn the main switch OFF and remove the plug from the outlet, then contact your service
  representative.
- If the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems will not be used for more than one month, remove the plug from the outlet for safety purposes during that time. This could cause a fire or give you an electric shock if an insulation failure occurs.

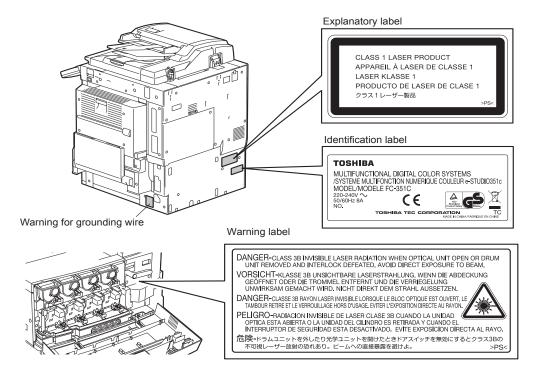
# Caution

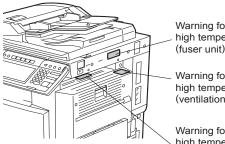
• Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force.

Breaking the glass could cause personal injury.

- Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems. If the objects fall off, this could cause injury.
- Do not remove or connect the plug with wet hands, as this could give you an electric shock.
- Do not touch the fuser unit or the metal area around it. Since they are very hot, you could be burned or the shock could cause you to get your hand injured in the machine.
- When changing the angle of the control panel, be careful not to catch your hands in the gap between the equipment and the control panel. This could cause personal injury.
- Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.
- Be careful not to let your fingers be caught between the equipment and the automatic duplexing unit. This could injure you.
- Do not place 3.3 kg or more of objects on an optional work table. Breaking the work table could cause personal injury.
- Do not touch the metal portion of the guide plate in the automatic duplexing unit as it could burn you.

# Position of Certification label, etc.

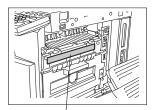




- Warning for high temperature area (fuser unit)
- Warning for high temperature area (ventilation holes)
- Warning for high temperature area (fuser unit)



Warning for handling transfer belt



Warning for high temperature area

# Other points

- Be very careful to treat the touch panel gently and never hit it. Breaking the surface could cause malfunctions.
- Do not turn the power OFF with jammed paper left inside the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems.

This could cause malfunctions when the main switch is turned ON next time. To turn the power OFF, see  $\square$  P.50 "Turning power off (Shutdown)".

- Be sure to turn the power OFF when leaving the office or if there is a power outage. However, Do not turn the power OFF if the weekly timer is in use.
- To turn the power OFF, see 🛄 P.50 "Turning power off (Shutdown)".
- Be careful because the paper exit area and paper just after exiting are hot.

# **During maintenance or inspection**

# Warning

- Never attempt to repair, disassemble or modify the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems by yourself. You could cause a fire or get an electric shock.
   Always contact your Service representative for maintenance or repair of the internal parts of the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems.
- Always keep the plug and outlet clean. Prevent them from accumulating dust and dirt. This could cause a fire and give you an electric shock due to the heat released by electric leakage.
- Do not let liquids such as water and oil get into the system when cleaning the floor. This could cause a fire and give you an electric shock.

# Caution

 Do not touch the stapling area. The actual needle point could cause you personal injury. Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) P.355
 Finisher (optional) P.350

# Other points

- Do not use such solvents as thinner or alcohol when cleaning the surface of the Multifunctional Digital Colour Systems.
  - This could warp the shape of the surface or leave it discoloured.
  - When using a chemical cleaning pad to clean it, pay attention to any cautionary points.

# When handling supplies

# Caution

The following notice sets out the exclusions and limitations of liability of TOSHIBA TEC CORPO-RATION (including its employees, agents and sub-contractors) to any purchaser or user ('User') of the e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c, including its accessories, options and bundled software ('Product').

- The exclusion and limitations of liability referred to in this notice shall be effective to the fullest extent permissible at law. For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this notice shall be taken to exclude or limit TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION's liability for death or personal injury caused by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION's negligence or TOSHIBA TEC CORPORA-TION's fraudulent misrepresentation.
- 2. All warranties, conditions and other terms implied by law are, to the fullest extent permitted by law, excluded and no such implied warranties are given or apply in relation to the Products.

3. TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable for any loss, cost, expense, claim or damage whatsoever caused by any of the following:
(a) use or handling of the Product otherwise than in accordance with the manuals, including

but not limited to Operator's Manual, User's Guide, and/or incorrect or careless handling or use of the Product;

(b) any cause which prevents the Product from operating or functioning correctly which arises from or is attributable to either acts, omissions, events or accidents beyond the reasonable control of TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION including without limitation acts of God, war, riot, civil commotion, malicious or deliberate damage, fire, flood, or storm, natural calamity, earthquakes, abnormal voltage or other disasters;

(c) additions, modifications, disassembly, transportation, or repairs by any person other than service technicians authorized by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION; or
 (d) use of paper, supplies or parts other than those recommended by TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION.

4. Subject to paragraph 1, TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable to Customer for: (a) loss of profits; loss of sales or turnover; loss of or damage to reputation; loss of production; loss of anticipated savings; loss of goodwill or business opportunities; loss of customers; loss of, or loss of use of, any software or data; loss under or in relation to any contract; or

(b) any special, incidental, consequential or indirect loss or damage, costs, expenses, financial loss or claims for consequential compensation;

whatsoever and howsoever caused which arise out of or in connection with the Product or the use or handling of the Product even if TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION is advised of the possibility of such damages.

TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION shall not be liable for any loss, cost, expense, claim or damage caused by any inability to use (including, but not limited to failure, malfunction, hang-up, virus infection or other problems) which arises from use of the Product with hardware, goods or software which TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION has not directly or indirectly supplied

# Forgery prevention function

This copier has a forgery prevention function. Please ensure that your digital full-colour copier is not used for making copies of prohibited items.

# Storage of colour copies

- The copies should be kept in a place which is not exposed to light to prevent fading when they are stored for a long time.
- If copies are kept pressed between plastics made of chloroethylene for a long time, the toner may melt and stick to the plastic due to high pressure and high temperature. Keep them in polyethylene binders.
- When a colour copy is folded, the toner at the fold can become separated.
- The toner on the copies may melt if it touches solvent. If the ink on the copies has not completely dried, the toner may also melt. Keep copies away from solvent.
- When copies are kept near an extremely high temperature such as a heater, the toner may melt. Keep them at room temperature and do not allow this to vary very much.

# 

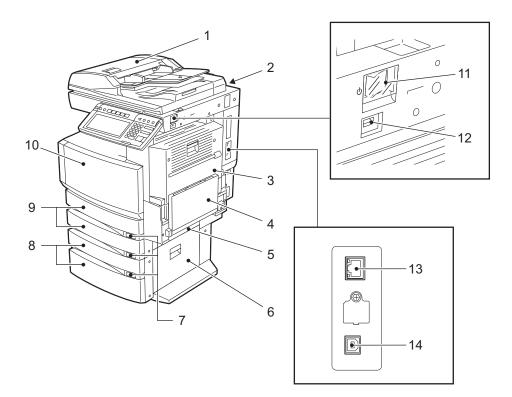
# **BEFORE USING EQUIPMENT**

This chapter describes what you need to know before using this equipment, such as how to turn the power ON or how to set copy paper.

Description of Each Component	
Main components	
Configuration of options	
Control panel	
Adjustment of the angle of the control panel	
Touch panel	
Preparation 1- Turning Power On/Off	
Turning power on	
When department or user management is used	
Preparation 2- Turning power off (Shutdown)	50
Turning power off (Shutdown)	
Preparation 3- Setting Copy Paper	54
Acceptable copy paper	
Setting copy paper (size change)	
Changing the setting of paper size	61
Drawer for special uses	
Placing paper in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	

# **Description of Each Component**

# Main components



## 1. Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (Optional, MR-3018)

A stack of originals placed on this are scanned one sheet by one. Both sides of original can be scanned. Maximum 100 sheets ( $80 \text{ g/m}^2$ ),  $80 \text{ sheets} (90 \text{ g/m}^2)$  (or stack height 16 mm) of originals can be placed in one go.

(The maximum number of sheets may vary depending on the media type of the originals.) P.72 "Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"

P.311 "Misfeed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"

2. Operator's Manual pocket (Back side)

Keep the Operator's Manual in this.

### 3. Automatic duplexing unit

This is a unit to make copies on both sides of paper. Open it when paper jams occur.  $\square$  P.317 "Misfeed in the automatic duplexing unit"

### 4. Bypass tray

Use this to make copies on special media types such as overhead transparencies, waterproof paper.

P.85 "Bypass copying"

P.316 "Misfeed on the bypass tray"

### 5. Paper feed cover

Open this cover when releasing a paper misfeed in the drawer feeding area. P.314 "Misfeed in drawer feeding area"

### 6. Paper feed cover (optional)

Open this cover when releasing a paper misfeed in the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional) or Large Capacity Feeder (optional). P.315 "Misfeed in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)" P.316 "Misfeed in the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional)"

### 7. Paper size indicator

# 8. Paper Feed Pedestal (optional, KD-1018) and Additional Drawer Module (optional, MY-1031) or Large Capacity Feeder (optional, KD-1019)

### 9. Drawers

Maximum 550 sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>), 450 sheets (90 g/m<sup>2</sup>) of plain paper can be placed in one go.

### 10. Front cover

Open this cover when you replace the toner cartridge and clean the charger. P.302 "Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol" P.309 "Replace Toner Bag Symbol" P.340 ""Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning""

### 11. Power switch

Turn the power of the equipment ON or OFF with this.  $\square$  P.45 "Turning power on"

### 12. Connector for USB storage device

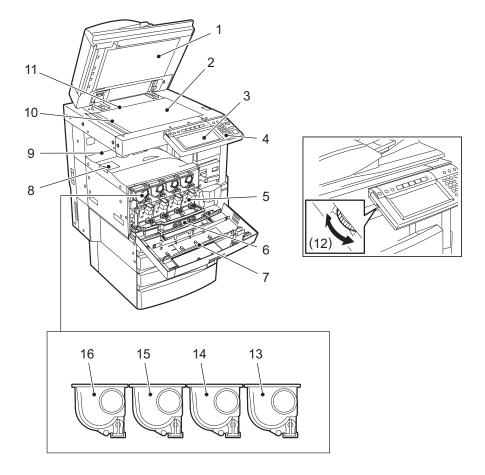
Use this connector when retrieving scanning data to USB storage device. See the Scan Guide for details.

### 13. Network interface connector

Use this connector when connecting this equipment with network.

### 14. USB terminal (4-pin)

With this terminal, the equipment can be connected to your PC using a commercially available USB cable.



### 1. Platen sheet

P.374 "Daily Inspection"

### 2. Original glass

Use this to copy three-dimensional originals, book-type originals and special paper such as overhead transparencies or tracing paper, as well as plain paper. P.68 "Setting Originals"

### 3. Touch panel

Use this to set copying density, colour adjustment, finishing mode and various types of other functions.

P.41 "Touch panel"

### 4. Control panel

Use this to make copies, enter the number of copy sets, and perform and set various types of other functions. P.37 "Control panel"

### 5. Charger cleaner

P.340 ""Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning""

### 6. Toner bag

P.309 "Replace Toner Bag Symbol"

### 7. Slit glass cleaner

Use this if the copied or printed paper is stained. P.340 ""Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning""

### 8. Paper exit stopper

Use this to prevent the exiting paper from falling. Open this when you make a large amount of copies on a larger size of paper (e.g.A3, A4).

### 9. Receiving tray

### 10. Scanning area

The data of originals transported from the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional, MR-3018) are scanned here.

### 11. Original scale

Use this to check the size of an original placed on the original glass.

### 12. Touch panel contrast adjustment volume

Use this when it is difficult to see the display on the touch panel.

### 13. Black toner cartridge

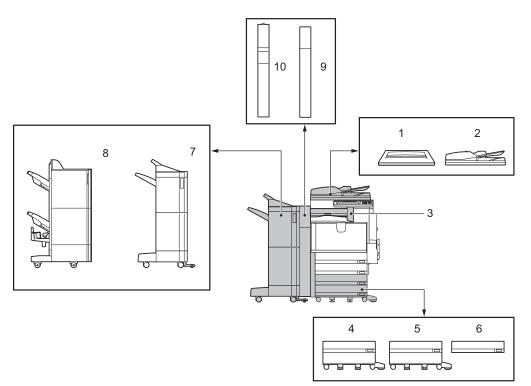
### 14. Cyan toner cartridge

### 15. Magenta toner cartridge

### 16. Yellow toner cartridge

P.302 "Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol"

# **Configuration of options**



- 1. Original Cover (KA-3511PC) Holds an original.
- 2. Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (MR-3018) Automatically feeds a placed stack of originals one by one to have them copied.
- 3. Bridge Unit (KN-3500)

Acts as a relay for the finisher and this equipment.

4. Large Capacity Feeder (KD-1019)

This feeder enables you to feed up to 2500 sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>), 2000 sheets (90 g/m<sup>2</sup>) of A4 paper.

- 5. Paper Feed Pedestal (KD-1018) Adds one drawer to the equipment.
- 6. Additional Drawer Module (MY-1031) Enables one drawer to be added to the Paper Feed Pedestal.
- 7. Finisher (MJ-1101)

This finisher enables sort/group finishing and stapling. The Hole Punch Unit (optional, MJ-6101) can be installed to this finisher. The Bridge Unit (optional, KN-3500) is required for the installation of this finisher.

#### 8. Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1030)

This finisher enables saddle stitching, in addition to sort/group finishing and stapling. The Hole Punch Unit (optional, MJ-6004) can be installed to this finisher. The Bridge Unit (optional, KN-3500) is required for the installation of this finisher.

#### 9. Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6101)

This unit enables you to punch holes on printouts. It can be used by installing it on the Finisher (MJ-1101).

#### 10. Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6004)

This unit enables you to punch holes on printouts. It can be used by installing it on the Finisher (MJ-1030).

Other options available are as follows. Contact your service technician or Toshiba product distributors for details.

#### Work Table (KK-3511)

This is a small table for placing originals while the equipment is operated.

- Installed on the right-hand side of the equipment
- · Cannot be installed with e-BRIDGE ID Gate at the same time

#### FAX Unit (GD-1210)

This is a unit for using the equipment as a Fax.

• Installed inside of the equipment

#### 2nd Line for Fax Unit (GD-1160)

This unit enables to add a line to the Fax to make it 2nd line.

- Installed inside of the equipment
- The Fax Unit (GD-1210) is necessary.

#### Data Overwrite Kit (GP-1060)

This is a kit to delete the temporarily stored data when copy, print, scan, Fax, internet Fax and network Fax are performed.

• Installed inside of the equipment

#### 512 MB Expansion Memory (GC-1250)

This memory enables the B4, A3 and FOLIO (LD, LG, 13" LG, COMP) size originals to be scanned with the slim PDF format.

• Installed inside of the equipment

#### 256 MB Expansion Memory (GC-1260)

This memory enables scanning in the full colour, auto colour and image smoothing mode with 600 dpi.

Installed inside of the equipment

#### Wireless LAN Module (GN-1041)

This module enables the equipment to be used in a wireless LAN environment.

- Installed inside of the equipment
- The Antenna (GN-3010) is necessary.
- The equipment cannot be connected to the wireless and wired LAN at the same time.

#### Bluetooth Module (GN-2010)

This module enables the Bluetooth printing.

- Installed inside of the equipment
- The Antenna (GN-3010) is necessary.

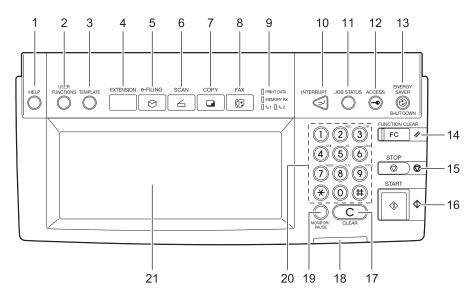
#### Antenna (GN-3010)

This is used when the Wireless LAN module and Bluetooth Module are installed.

- When the Wireless LAN module (GN-1041) is installed, it is placed on the back right side of the equipment.
- When the Bluetooth Module (GN-2010) is installed, it is placed on the back left side of the equipment.

## **Control panel**

Use the buttons on the control panel for various operations and settings through the equipment.



#### 1. [HELP] button

Use this button to display a desired operation procedure.

#### 2. [USER FUNCTIONS] button

Use this button for paper size or media type setting of drawers, and registration of the copy, scan and FAX settings (including a default setting change.) See the User Functions Guide for the functions enabled by this button.

#### 3. [TEMPLATE] button

Use this button to store and recall frequently used copy, scan, and FAX settings.

#### 4. [EXTENSION] button

Any operation with this button is invalid at present. This button is to extend functions in the future.

#### 5. [e-FILING] button

Use this button to access saved image data.

#### 6. [SCAN] button

Use this button to use the scanning function.

#### 7. [COPY] button

Use this button to use the copier function.

#### 8. [FAX] button

Use this button to use the FAX / Internet FAX function.

#### 9. PRINT DATA / MEMORY RX / FAX communication lamps

These lamps show the status of FAX data reception and FAX communication.

#### 10. [INTERRUPT] button

Use this button to interrupt the copy job in process and perform another one. The interrupted job is resumed by your pressing this button again.

#### 11. [JOB STATUS] button

Use this button to confirm each job status, printing status, and FAX transmission/reception status of a print job, scan job and FAX job. ( P.262 "Job Status")

#### 12. [ACCESS] button

Use this button when the department code or user information has been set. If this button is pressed after copying, the next user cannot use functions such as copying without keying in the department code or user information. See the User Functions Guide for the department and user management.

#### 13. [ENERGY SAVER] button

Use this button when you want to shut down the equipment or when you want the equipment enter into the energy saving mode. When you press this button, the menu for the energy saving mode appears. Press the [SLEEP] button on this menu to enter into the energy saving mode and press the [SHUTDOWN] button to shut down the equipment.

#### 14. [FUNCTION CLEAR] button

When this button is pressed, all selected functions are cleared and returned to the default settings.

#### 15. [STOP] button

Use this button to stop any scanning and copying operations in progress.

#### 16. [START] button

Use this button to start copying, scanning and FAX operations.

#### 17. [CLEAR] button

Use this button to correct numbers keyed in, such as the copy quantity.

#### 18. ERROR lamp

This lamp lights when an error occurs and the equipment needs some actions to be taken.

#### 19. [MONITOR/PAUSE] button

Use this button only when a FAX Unit (optional) is installed. (See the Operator's Manual for Facsimile Function for details.)

#### 20. Digital keys

Use these keys to enter any numbers such as the copy quantity.

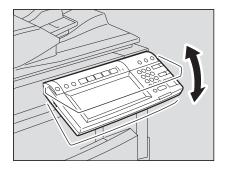
#### 21. Touch panel

Use this panel for the various settings of each function of the copier, scanner and FAX. This panel also indicates the status of the equipment, such as when you run out of paper or there is a paper jam.

## Adjustment of the angle of the control panel

## When adjusting the angle of the control panel

The angle of the control panel is adjustable at any angle between 7 and 45 degrees from the horizontal position.



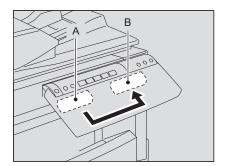
#### Caution

When changing the angle of the control panel, be careful not to catch your hands in the gap between the equipment and the control panel. This could injure you.

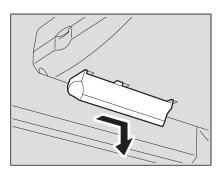
## When fixing the angle of the control panel

The angle of the control panel can be fixed by using the stopper on the backside of the control panel (at 7 degrees from the horizontal position). The stopper is located on A when the equipment is set up. Move it from the position A to B before fixing it.

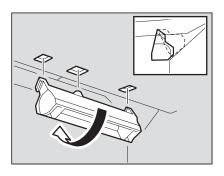
- A: The position where the angle is adjustable.
- B: The position where the angle is fixed.



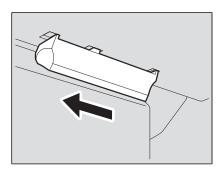
1 Slide the stopper (in the position A) slightly to the right, and then pull it out.

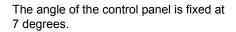


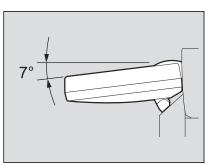
2 Fit the latches of the stopper in the hole of the position B and insert them turning the stopper itself.



**3** Shift the stopper to the left until it clicks.





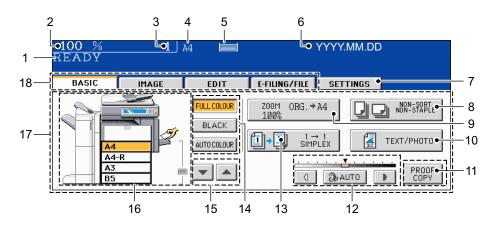


## **Touch panel**

When the power is turned on, the basic menu for the copier function appears on this touch panel. The status of the equipment is also displayed on the touch panel with messages and illustrations.

- 1. Message
- 2. Reproduction ratio
- 3. Number of copy sets
- 4. APS/AMS\* or currently selected paper size
- 5. Remaining paper level
- 6. Date and time
- 7. [SETTINGS] button
- 8. Finisher button
- 9. Enlargement/Reduction ([Zoom...]) button

- 10. Original mode button
- 11. [PROOF COPY] button
- 12. Density adjustment buttons
- 13. Simplex / duplex button
- 14. Colour mode button
- 15. Paper source selection buttons
- 16. Equipment status indication area
- 17. Function setting area
- 18. Index buttons
- \* APS: Automatic paper selection, AMS: Automatic magnification selection



## Message display

The following information appears at the top of the touch panel: Equipment status, operational instructions, cautionary messages, reproduction ratios, number of copy sets, paper size of a selected drawer, amount of paper in a selected drawer and date and time.

## **Touch-buttons**

Press these buttons on the touch panel lightly to set various functions.

#### Index buttons

Press these buttons to switch menus. The type and number of the index buttons vary depending on the function of the copier, scanner and e-Filing.

#### Function setting area

This area includes buttons for selecting and setting each function.

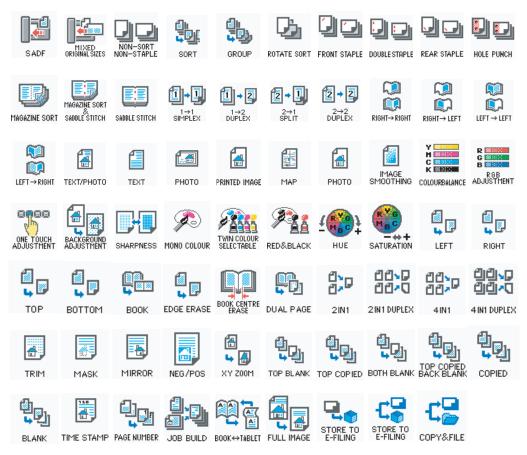
#### [SETTINGS] button

Press this button to confirm currently set functions.

(An example is shown below.)

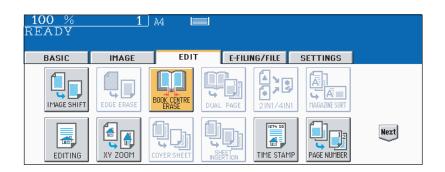


Buttons appearing on the various menus are as follows (some buttons may not appear on the menu):



## **Clearing functions selected**

When you press the selected button, the function which has been selected is cleared. Or the selected setting is cleared automatically by the automatic function clear\* when the equipment has been left inactive for a specified period of time.

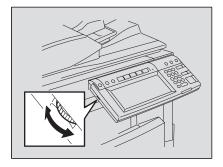


#### \* Automatic function clear:

This function works when a specified period of time has passed since the last paper exit or the last entry of any button. This function returns all the function settings to default without the need to press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. When the department or user management function is being used, the display returns to the department code or user information input menu. When these functions are not being used, the display returns to the basic menu of the copier function. The period for the automatic function clear is set at 45 seconds by default at the time of installation of the equipment. See the User Functions Guide for change of this setting.

## Adjusting the contrast of the touch panel

Turn this adjustment volume on the left side of the control panel to adjust the contrast of the touch panel.



## **Setting letters**

The following menu appears when any letter entry is required for the operations of scanning, e-Filing, template and Internet FAX.

Use the buttons on the touch panel for letter entry and use the digital keys on the control panel for number entry.



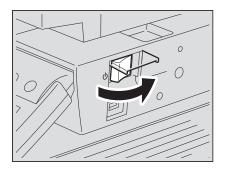
À Á Â Ã Ă Ă Æ Ç È É Back Space
Õ Ö Ø Ù Ú Û Ü Ý Þ Š
Đ   B   Ö       Shift   Caps Lock
Space CANCEL ENTER Prev

The following buttons are used for letter entry.

[Space]:	Press this to enter a space.
[CANCEL]:	Press this to cancel the entry of letters.
[ENTER]:	Press this to fix all entered letters.
[Back Space]	Press this to delete the letter before the cursor.
[←][→]:	Press them to move the cursor.
[ <b>←</b> ][ <b>→</b> ]: [Shift]:	Press them to move the cursor. Press this to enter capital letters.
[Shift]:	

## **Turning power on**

Open the switch cover, and then turn the power switch on.



- The equipment starts warming-up. "Wait Warming Up" appears during warming-up.
- While the equipment is warming up, you can use the auto job start function.
   (III) P.82 "Scanning the next originals during copying (Auto job start)")

The equipment will be ready for copying after about 99 seconds and "READY" appears. When you turn the power of the equipment OFF, do not simply turn the power switch to turn it off but be sure to shut it down.

P.50 "Turning power off (Shutdown)"

#### Tip

When the use of the equipment is managed under department management or user management function, you need to enter the department code or user information before making a copy. For details, see III P.46 "When department or user management is used".

### When department or user management is used

When the use of the equipment is managed under department management or user management function, each user needs to enter the department code or user information.

## **Department management**

You can restrict users or manage copy volumes made by an individual group or department in your company using the department codes. When the copy volume is controlled under the department code, enter the code after turning the power on. See the User Functions Guide for setting and registration of the department codes.

When the power is turned on, the following menu appears.

This menu also appears when the [ACCESS] button is pressed or the automatic function clear has worked.

100 % 1 APS Enter Department Code	
DEPARTMENT CODE > Enter department code (5-digit)	Department Code :
****	Department Code +
	ENTER

Key in a department code (5 digits) previously registered and press the [ENTER] button. The menu will switch and the equipment will be ready to be used.

If the department code keyed in is incorrect, the menu does not change. In this case, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button and then key in the correct code.

#### When copying is finished

When you finish all operations, press the [ACCESS] button to prevent unauthorized use of the equipment. The display returns to the department code input menu.

## **User management**

1

Users of the equipment can be limited and the available functions and past record of each user can be controlled by using the user management function. When the equipment is managed under this function, turn the power of the equipment ON and enter the information required (e.g. user name, password) to use the equipment. The menu for entering user information also appears when you pressed the [ACCESS] button on the control panel or automatic function clear has worked. Enter the information following the procedure below.

#### The menu for user authentication appears. MFP local authentication, LDAP authentication

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 APS
USER AUTHENTICATION	Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER USER NAME PASSWORD
	ENTER

#### Windows Domain Authentication

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 APS
USER AUTHENTICATION	Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER USER NAME PASSWORD DOMAIN Dept01
	ENTER

The domain name previously set by the network administrator is displayed in [DOMAIN].



If the domain name belonging to your organization is not displayed, press the [DOMAIN] button and select it.

DOMAIN1 DOMAIN2 DOMAIN3	Dept01 Dept02 Dept03	
	CANCEL	

**2** Press the [USER NAME] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1_ APS
USER AUTHENTICATION	Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER         USER NAME         PASSWUKU         DOMAIN         Dept01
	ENTER

**3** Enter the user name (maximum 128 letters) and then press the [ENTER] button.

kokkek*_
! " # \$ % & ` ( ) = ~   ` { } Back Space
A S D F 6 H J K L
Z X C V B N M , . Shift CapsLock
Space CANCEL ENTER

**4** Press the [PASSWORD] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 APS
USER AUTHENTICATION	Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER USer01  PASSWORD DUFININ Dept01
	ENTER

## **5** Enter the password (maximum 64 letters) and then press the [ENTER] button.

******
! " # \$ % & ' ( ) = ~   ` { } Back Space
*<>?^@+[];:/\ +>
Q W E R T Y U I O P
A S D F G H J K L
Z X C V B N M , . Shift CapsLock
Space CANCEL ENTER

## 6 Press the [ENTER] button.

100 % READY	1 APS
USER AUTHENTICATION	Key in the user name and password. Press ENTER USER NAME USEr01 PASSWORD ************************************
	ENTER

The menu will switch and the equipment will be ready to be used. If the user information is incorrectly entered, the menu will not switch. In this case, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button and then enter it again.

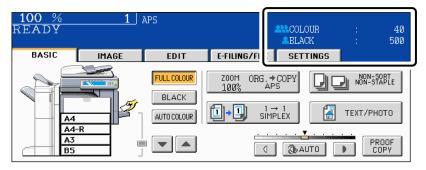
#### Displaying the available number of copies

The amount is determined by how many copies the user (**2**) or the department (**2**) has remaining and the smaller of the two numbers is displayed.

The number appears for 5 seconds on the upper right of the screen.

COLOUR: Available number of copies for colour copying

BLACK: Available number of copies for black-and-white copying



The display differs depending on the management setting of this equipment.

#### When copying is finished

When you finish all operations, press the [ACCESS] button to prevent unauthorized use of the equipment. The display returns to the one for entering user information.

## Preparation 2- Turning power off (Shutdown)

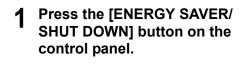
## **Turning power off (Shutdown)**

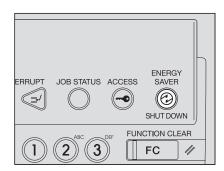
When turning OFF the power of the equipment, be sure to shut it down following the procedure below. Make sure to check the following three points before shutdown. Be sure to confirm the following three points before shutdown.

- No jobs should be left in the print job list. ( P.262 "Job Status")
- None of the PRINT DATA, MEMORY RX and FAX communication lamps should be blinking. (If the equipment is shut down while any of the above lamps is blinking, jobs in progress such as FAX reception will be aborted.)
- No PC should access the equipment via the network.

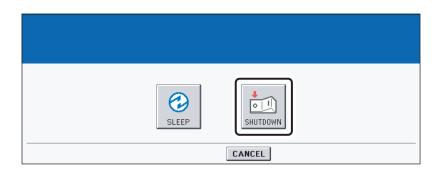
#### Notes

- Do not press the power switch to turn the power OFF, otherwise the stored data may be lost or the hard disk may be damaged.
- When the equipment is shut down, the job in progress is cleared.





**2** Press the [SHUTDOWN] button on the touch panel.



To cancel the shutdown operation, press the [CANCEL] button.

**3** "Shutdown in progress" appears on the menu. After a while, the equipment is shut down and the power is turned OFF.

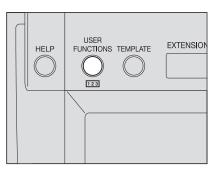


The power switch automatically returns to the OFF position.

# Turning the power off (Shutting down) with the [USER FUNCTIONS] button

The equipment can also be shut down by following the procedure below.

**1** Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.



**2** Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu, and then press the [SHUTDOWN] button.

		11055				
ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	AD	MIN		
	GENERAL	СОРУ	FAX	SCAN	P S	LIST
RETURN	DRAWER	CHECK E-MAIL	SHUTDOWN			BIP PRINTING

**3** "Processing job will be deleted. Are you sure you want to shutdown?" appears on the menu. Press the [YES] button.

		1055	
ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN
	(	Processing job Are you sure yo	will be delete ou want to shut NO

To cancel the shutdown operation, press the [NO] button.

4 "Shutdown in progress" appears on the menu. After a while, the equipment is shut down and the power is turned OFF.

ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN
		Shutdown in pr	ogress

The power switch automatically returns to the OFF position.

## **Energy Saving Mode**

This equipment supports two energy saving modes; the Automatic Energy Save mode and the Sleep Mode.

#### Automatic Energy Save

The equipment enters the Automatic Energy Save mode automatically after a specified period of time\*1 since its last use. During this mode, "Saving energy – Press START button" appears on the touch panel.

#### Sleep Mode

The equipment enters the Sleep Mode automatically after a specified period of time\*2 since its last use. During this mode, the message of the Automatic Energy Save mode disappears and the [ENERGY SAVER / SHUTDOWN] button lights in green.

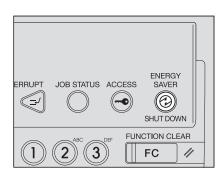
These modes are automatically cleared upon the reception of print data, Fax data, Internet Fax data or E-mails. They are also cleared by pressing the [START] button.

Note 1: This period is set at 15 minutes by factory default.

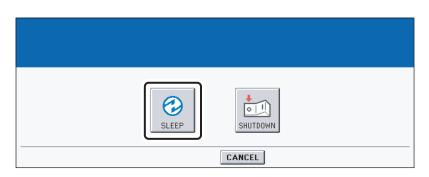
Note 2: This period is set at 60 minutes for the e-STUDIO2500c/3500c and 90 minutes for the e-STUDIO3510c by factory default.

Contact your service representative to change the default settings noted above.

1 Press the [ENERGY SAVER/ SHUT DOWN] button on the control panel.



## **2** Press the [SLEEP] button on the touch panel.



The equipment enters into the sleep mode. During this mode, the display on the touch panel disappears and the [ENERGY SAVER/SHUT DOWN] button lights in green.

#### To cancel the energy saving mode

Press the [START] button on the control panel. The sleep mode is cleared and the equipment will be ready for copying.

The sleep mode is also cleared by pressing any button of [ENERGY SAVER], [COPY], [SCAN], [FAX] and [e-FILING].

## Preparation 3- Setting Copy Paper

## Acceptable copy paper

Feeder	Paper type	Paper size	Maximum sheet capacity
Drawers (Including optional drawers)	Plain paper (64 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Recycled paper (64 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	(Standard size) A/B format: A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO LT format: LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8.5"SQ	600 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) 550 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) 450 sheets (81 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Thick 1 (106 - 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	ck 1 K format:	300 sheets
Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	Plain paper (64 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	(Standard size) A4, LT	3000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) 2500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) 2000 sheets (81 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Bypass tray	Plain paper (64 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	(Standard size) A/B format: A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, A6-R,	100 sheets (64 - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) 80 sheets (81 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Thick 1 (106 - 163 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, 305 x 457 WIDE	40 sheets
	Thick 2 (164 - 209 g/m <sup>2</sup> )	LT format: LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8.5"SQ,	40 sheets * <sup>1</sup>
	Thick 3       12" x 18" FULL         (210 - 256 g/m²)       K format:         Sticker labels       8K, 16K, 16K-R         Length: 100 - 297 mm,	30 sheets * <sup>1</sup>	
		*1, *2	
	Water proof paper Width: 148 - 432 m		30 sheets
	OHP film	(Standard size) A4 only	30 sheets <sup>*1</sup>

\*1 Automatic duplex copying is not available.

\*2 Use Thick 2 mode for sticker labels.

#### Tips

- Multiple paper sizes cannot be set in one drawer.
- "Maximum sheet capacity" refers to the maximum number of sheets when Toshiba-recommended paper is set.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated inside of the guide.
- "LT format" is the standard size for only use in North America.
- "K format" is a Chinese standard size.

Abbreviations for paper sizes: LT: Letter, LD: Ledger, LG: Legal, ST: Statement, COMP: Computer, SQ: Square

## **Recommended paper**

To make copies with a fine colour image, the following types of paper are recommended. If you wish to use copy paper other than the recommended types, consult your service technician.

Paper type	Toshiba recommendati	Mode	
Plain paper	ColourCopy/mondi	90 g/m <sup>2</sup>	PLAIN
		100 g/m <sup>2</sup>	
Thick		120 g/m <sup>2</sup>	THICK1
		160 g/m <sup>2</sup>	
		200 g/m <sup>2</sup>	THICK2
		220 g/m <sup>2</sup>	THICK3
		250 g/m <sup>2</sup>	
Sticker labels	3478/Zweckform-Avery	-	THICK2
Transparencies <sup>*1</sup>	BG72/FOLEX	-	TRANSPARENCY
Water proof paper	Water Proof Paper Duplex/ TOMOEGAWA PAPER	230 g/m <sup>2</sup>	SPECIAL1
	AquaAce/Verbatim	230 g/m <sup>2</sup>	SPECIAL2

\*1 Only Toshiba-recommended OHP film should be used. Using any other film may cause a malfunction.

## Handling and storing paper

Pay attention to the following points:

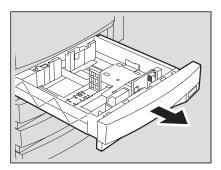
- Avoid using paper that is specially treated or previously printed on another machine, and also avoid performing double copying on the same side of the paper, since this may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use paper with creases, wrinkles or curls, paper prone to curling, smooth or rough paper; this may cause paper misfeeds.
- Paper should be wrapped in its wrapping and stored in a damp-free place.
- To prevent paper from being folded or bent, store it evenly on a flat surface.

## Setting copy paper (size change)

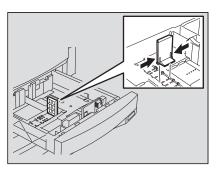
When you set or add copy paper in the drawer, follow the procedure below.

## Placing paper in the drawer

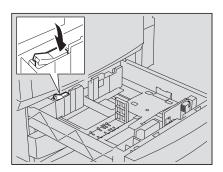
- Turn the power on.
- **2** Pull out the drawer carefully until it comes to a stop.



**3** Push the lower part of the end guide in the direction of the arrow to remove it, then reinstall it at the desired paper size (indicated on the bottom inner surface on the drawer).

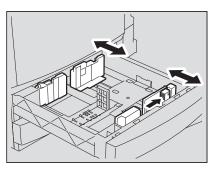


4 Push the arrow part (right side) of the side guide to unlock it.

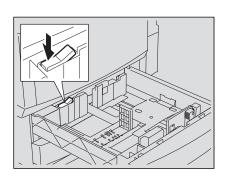


5 While pushing the green lever of the side guide in the direction of the arrow, set the side guide to the desired paper size.

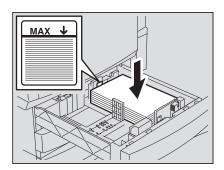
Adjust the side guides with both hands.



6 Push the arrow part (left side) to lock the side guide.



**7** Place paper in the drawer(s).

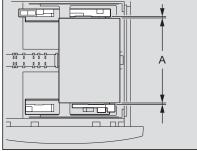


#### Notes

- Place paper with its copy side up. (The copy side may be described on the wrapping paper.)
- For the maximum number of sheets that can be set, see P.54 "Acceptable copy paper".
- Fan the paper well before placing it in the drawer.
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated inside of the guide.
- Do not use creased, folded, wrinkled or damp sheets of paper.

#### Note

Make sure that a gap of 0.5 mm (1.0 mm or less in total) is left between the paper and the side guide for plain paper, and approx. 0.5 mm to 1.0 mm (approx. 1.0 mm to 2.0 mm in total) for thick paper. If the gap is insufficient, it could cause paper misfeeding.



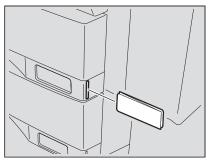
## **8** Push the drawer straight into the equipment until it comes to a stop.

Be sure to close the drawer securely and carefully.

Caution

Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.

**9** When the paper size is different from the one in the drawer, change the paper size indicator to match with the size of paper which has been set.



**10** When the paper size is different from the one in the drawer, press the [YES] button. When the paper is the same size as the one in the drawer, press the [NO] button. (When you press the [NO] button, you do not need to continue with step 11 and subsequent steps.)

Did you change paper size?

**11** Press the paper size button corresponding to the paper that has been set in the drawer.

Set the	e paper size of the 1st drawer			
SIZE	A3         A4         LD         LT         8K           A4-R         A5-R         LT-R         L6         16K           B4         B5         ST-R         COMP         16K-R           B5-R         FOLIO         13"L6         8.5SQ	TYPE PLAIN RECYCLED PAPER THICK 1 INSERT COVER SPECIAL FAX		
CANCEL				

12 When you want to change the setting of the drawer for special uses ( $\square$  P.62), press the paper type button.

Set the paper size of the 1st drawer				
SIZE       A3       A4       LD       LT       8K       TYPE         A4-R       A5-R       LT-R       L6       16K         B4       B5       ST-R       COMP       16K-R         B5-R       FOLIO       13"L6       8.5SQ	PLAIN RECYCLED PAPER THICK 1 INSERT COVER SPECIAL FAX			
CANCEL				

**13** Press the [ENTER] button.

## Changing the setting of paper size

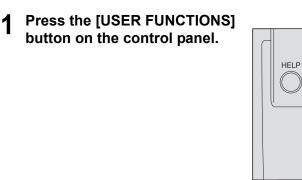
If the setting of the paper size registered in the equipment does not correspond to the one in the drawer, it could cause a paper jam. In this case, change the setting of the paper size according to the following procedure.

USER

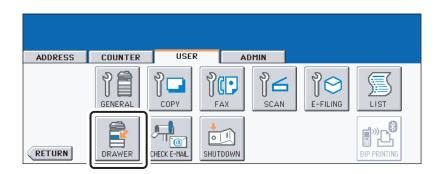
123

FUNCTIONS TEMPLATE

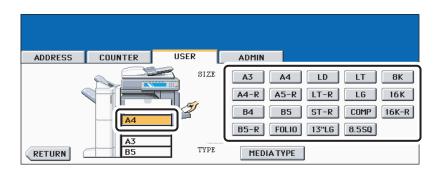
EXTENSION



**2** Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu and then press the [DRAWER] button.



**3** Press the drawer on the touch panel corresponding to the one in which the paper size has been set, and then press the button indicating the new one.



## Drawer for special uses

When you set paper for special uses other than normal copying (e.g. sheets for cover copying) in the drawer, you need to set this drawer for the special use in advance. If the drawer has been set for a special use, its indication will change on the touch panel. A drawer with this setting will not be used for normal copying.

The following paper types are selectable according to each purpose.

Paper type	Purpose	Indication	Reference
Cover sheet	Sheet used in the cover copying mode	COVER	P.180 "COVER SHEET"
Insertion sheet	Sheet used in the sheet insertion mode (Up to 2 drawers can be set for this mode. First, set Insert source 1, then press the drawer for the paper type of Insert source 2, and then press the [INSERT] button.)	INSERT1 (or INSERT2)	P.183 "SHEET INSERTION"
FAX paper	Fax paper (Fax Unit (optional) is required for the Fax function.)	F	(See the manual of each option.)
Special paper	Special types of paper (e.g. Paper with a watermark)	*	-
Thick 1	Sheet used when its weight is between 106g/m <sup>2</sup> and 163g/m <sup>2</sup> . It can be set with other paper types.	× 1	P.54 "Acceptable copy paper"
Recycled paper	It can be set with other paper types.	<b>\$</b>	

## Setting the drawer for special uses

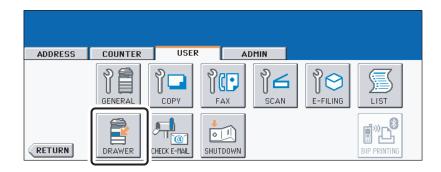
**1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

#### Notes

- Place paper with its copy side up.
- Set the paper size as required. ( P.61 "Changing the setting of paper size")
- 2 Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.

HELP	USER FUNCTIONS TEMPLATE	

**3** Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to enter the user setting menu, then press the [DRAWER] button.

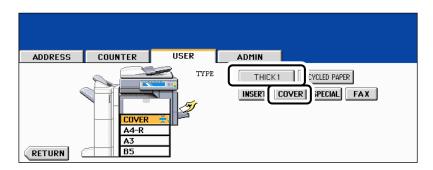


**4** Press the desired drawer and [MEDIA TYPE] button on the touch panel.

ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN
		SIZE	A3       A4       LD       LT       8K         A4-R       A5-R       LT-R       L6       16K         B4       B5       ST-R       COMP       16K-R         B5-R       FOLIO       13"L6       8.5SQ

## **5** Press the paper type button.

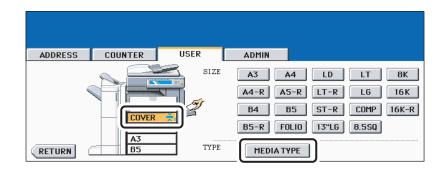
E.g.: When Thick paper 1 is set in the 1st drawer and used as a cover sheet



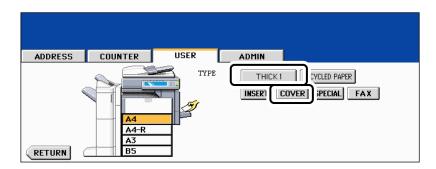
Press the [RETURN] button three times or the [COPY] button on the control panel to return to the basic menu.

### Clearing the drawer for special uses

- **1** Follow steps 1 to 3 of "Setting the drawer for special uses" (P.62).
- **2** Press the drawer on the touch panel corresponding to the one whose setting you want to clear, and then press the [MEDIA TYPE] button.



**3** Press the paper type button corresponding to the one placed in the drawer you selected in step 1.



The paper type setting is cleared and the indication of drawer returns to the original state.

#### Tips

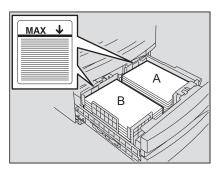
- When both Insertion sheet 1 and 2 have been set and only the setting of Insertion sheet 1 is cleared, the drawer for Insertion sheet 2 changes to the one for Insertion sheet 1.
- The paper type set in the drawer can be checked with the icons on the basic menu.

## Placing paper in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)

## **1** Pull out the Large Capacity Feeder carefully.

Place paper in A and B.

Pull out the drawer until it comes to a stop.



#### Notes

- Place paper with its copy side up. (The copy side may be described on the wrapping paper.)
- For the maximum number of sheets that can be set, see 🛄 P.54 "Acceptable copy paper".
- Be sure that the paper height does not exceed the line indicated on the side guide.
- Fan and jog the paper well before placing it on the drawer. Set the paper for A to the right side, and set that for B to the left side. (The paper can be set neatly if you pile it up gradually and alternately in A and B.) Be sure that the centre lever is not open (see the labels attached in the Large Capacity Feeder).
- Paper starts being fed out of the elevator tray (A) at first. When the paper on A has run out, the paper on B moves to the position of A and starts being fed.
- Do not use wrinkled, folded or damp sheets of paper.

**3** Push the drawer of the Large Capacity Feeder straight into the equipment until it comes to a stop.

Close the drawer completely. The elevator tray automatically moves up to the paper feeding position.

#### Caution

Be careful not to let your fingers be caught when closing the drawer. This could injure you.



## To change the paper type, see $\square$ P.61 "Changing the setting of paper size".



## **HOW TO MAKE COPIES**

This chapter explains the basic copying procedures.

Setting Originals	68
Acceptable originals	68
Placing originals on the glass	
Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)	
Making Copies	76
Initial (Default) settings	
Copying procedure	
Scanning the next originals during copying (Auto job start)	
Interrupt copying in progress and make other copies (Interrupt copying)	
Bypass Copying	85
Bypass copying	85
Bypass copying on standard size paper	
Bypass copying on non-standard size paper	91
Proof Copy	95

## **Setting Originals**

## Acceptable originals

Acceptable originals are as follows.

Setting position	Type of original	Maximum size	Acceptable sizes for automatic size detection
Original glass <sup>*1</sup>	Sheets 3-dimensional object Books	Length: 297 mm Width: 432 mm	(Standard size) A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R
Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) *2 *3	Plain paper Recycled paper 1-sided originals: 35 - 157 g/m <sup>2</sup> 2-sided originals: 50 - 157 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Length: 297 mm Width: 432 mm	(Standard size) A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO

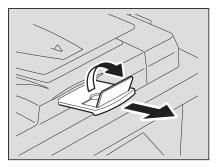
\*1 Do not place any heavy objects (4 kg or over) on the glass.

- \*2 Some originals cannot be used depending on their paper quality.
- \*3 Be sure to place A5-size originals in the landscape direction.

Automatic size detection does not work properly when LT or K format paper is used for printing. (LT format is a standard paper size for North America.) (K format is a standard paper size for China.)

#### Tips

- Originals up to 100 sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>), 80 sheets (90 g/m<sup>2</sup>) or 16 mm in height can be placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional), regardless of their sizes.
- When you copy a large number of landscape originals using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional), use the original stopper to prevent them from being scattered.



## Maximum number of sheets for scanning

A maximum of 1000 A4 sheets, or up until the memory becomes full can be accepted per 1 copy job.

When the number of scanned sheets has exceeded the above limit, a message "The number of originals exceeds the limits. Will you copy stored originals?" appears. If you want to print out the data of originals stored (scanned) up till then, press the [YES] button on the touch panel. If you want to delete the stored data, press the [NO] button.

The number of originals exceeds the limits. Will you copy stored originals?				
		E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	YES	NO		

## Placing originals on the glass

## **Sheet originals**

#### Caution

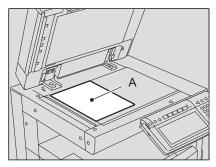
Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

**1** Raise the original cover or Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional).

Raise it 60 degrees or more for detecting the original.

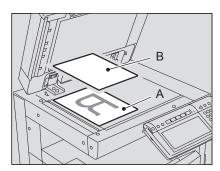
2 Place the original with its face down on the original glass and align it against the left rear corner of the glass.

A: Original



### 3 Lower the original cover or Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) carefully.

- When you want to copy originals with high transparency such as OHP films or tracing paper, place a blank sheet of paper, the same size as the original or larger, over the original.
- A: Original
- B: Blank sheet



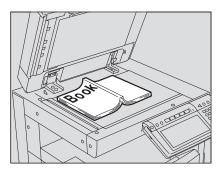
## **Book-type originals**

#### Caution

Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

**1** Raise the original cover or Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional).

- 2 Open the desired page of the original and place it face down. Align it against the left rear corner of the glass.
  - When you want to use the 2-sided copying function or the dual-page function on the book-type originals, align the centre of the original on the yellow indicator line of the glass.
     (III) P.130 "Book-type original -> 2-sided copy")
     (III) P.166 "DUAL PAGE")



- **3** Lower the original cover or Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) carefully.
  - Do not lower the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder forcibly when the original is very thick. There will be no problem in copying even if the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is not fully lowered.
  - Do not look fully at the original glass because intensive light may leak out during copying.

## Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)

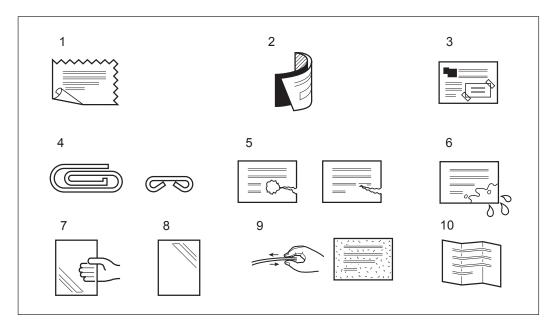
## **Precautions**

## Do not use the types of original 1 to 8 shown below because such types may cause misfeeding or damage to the equipment.

- 1. Badly wrinkled, folded or curled originals
- 2. Original with carbon paper
- 3. Taped, pasted or cut-out originals
- 4. Clipped or stapled originals
- 5. Originals with holes or tears
- 6. Damp originals
- 7. OHP films or tracing paper
- 8. Coating paper (coated with wax, etc.)

#### Use types of original 9 and 10 shown below with extra care.

- 9. Originals which cannot be moved with the fingers, or surface-treated originals (The sheets of such originals may not be able to be separated.)
- 10. Folded or curled originals should be smoothed out before being used.



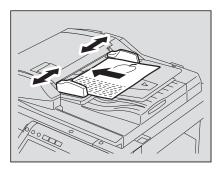
#### Tip

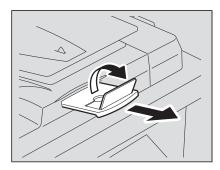
If the scanning area or the guide area is dirty, image trouble such as black streaks may occur in the printout. Weekly cleaning of these areas is recommended. (

## Continuous feed mode

## 1 Align all the originals. Then place them face up and align the side guides to the original length.

- Place the originals straight along the side guides.
- Collate the originals in the order that you want them to be copied. The top sheet of the originals will be fed first.
- This mode is also available for onesheet originals.
- Regardless of their sizes, originals are acceptable up to 100 sheets (50 to 80 g/m<sup>2</sup>) or 16 mm in height.
- For mixed-size originals, see P.101 "Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original size)".
- Use the original stopper as required.
- To replace the original stopper, lift it slightly and push it in.





#### Tip

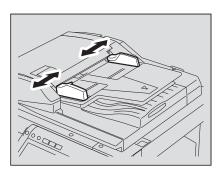
When the number of originals is too large to be set at one time, you can previously divide the originals into several sets to copy them continuously. To do so, place the first set of the originals and press the [CONTINUE] button on the touch panel while the data of this set are being scanned. When this scanning has finished, set the next set of the originals and press the [START] button on the control panel.

<u>100 %</u> Copying		A4 📕			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M A4→ 100% AP	s <b>7</b>	SORT TEXT/PHOTO
A3 B5	<u>к</u>	CONTINUE		•••• <b>⊻</b> ••••	PROOF COPY

## Single feed mode

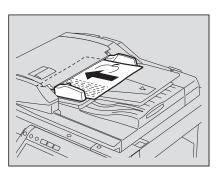
To switch over between the continuous feed mode and the single feed mode, see  $\square$  P.196 "ADF / SADF".

1 Align the side guides to the original width.



## 2 Insert the original with its face up and straight along the side guides.

The menu of step 3 will be displayed.



#### Note

The original will be pulled in automatically. Be sure to let go of it when it starts being pulled.

**3** If there are more originals, set them in the same way.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	>NEXT ORIG	HINAL ? YES	FINISHED		

The same operation is performed whether or not you press the [YES] button.

# **4** After all originals have finished being fed, press the [FINISHED] button.

## Tip

If the [FINISHED] button is not pressed, copying is started when the automatic function clear is operated.

P.43 "Clearing functions selected"

## **Making Copies**

## Initial (Default) settings

When the power is turned on, when the energy saving mode is cleared, and when the [FUNC-TION CLEAR] button on the control panel is pressed, various setting items are automatically set. These items are called the initial (default) settings. Set originals after placing paper or confirming that there is paper in the drawers. When the [START] button on the control panel is pressed with any of the settings unchanged, copies are made in the initial (default) settings. You can make copies as desired by setting various copy modes.

The table below lists the various items of the initial settings at the time of installation of this equipment.

Item	Initial (Default) setting
Reproduction ratio	100%
Copy quantity	1
Paper selection	Automatic Paper Selection (APS)
Original -> Copy	1-Sided -> 1-Sided
Density adjustment	Manual copy density adjustment
Colour mode	FULL COLOUR
Original mode	TEXT/PHOTO
Finishing mode	Placing originals on the original glass: Non-sort/ Non-staple mode Placing originals on the Reversing Automatic Doc- ument Feeder (optional): Sort mode
Feeding mode when originals are placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)	Continuous feed mode

These initial settings can be changed as desired. See the User Functions Guide for details.

## **Copying procedure**

# Placing originals on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)

**1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

For the types and sizes of paper selectable, see 🛄 P.54 "Acceptable copy paper".

## Tip

When the desired size or type of paper is not in any of the drawers or the Large Capacity Feeder, see the following pages.

P.56 "Setting copy paper (size change)"

P.65 "Placing paper in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)"

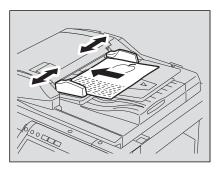
P.85 "Bypass Copying"

## **2** Place the original(s).

See the following pages to set the originals.

P.68 "Acceptable originals"
 P.72 "Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"

The originals are copied in the order of being scanned.



**3** Select the copy modes as required. When you want to copy more than one set, key in the desired number of copies.

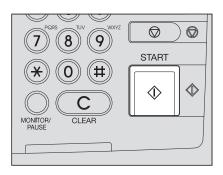
<u>71 %</u> READY	5.	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M A3+ 71%	A4 €	SORT
A3 A4- B4	-R				PROOF COPY

#### Tips

- Press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel to correct the number keyed in.
- Note that some combinations of copy modes are restricted. (P.389 "Copying Function Combination Matrix", P.391 "Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix")
- Once the [START] button on the control panel is pressed, any change in copy modes (including setting of the previously divided sets of originals) cannot be applied afterward.

## **A** Press the [START] button.

- Copying starts. The paper exits with its copied side down.
- When the drawer runs out of paper during copying, the corresponding drawer on the touch panel and the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel blink. Add paper to this drawer or select another one with the same paper size.
- Be careful because the paper exit area and paper just after exiting are hot.



## Placing an original on the original glass

## Place paper in the drawer(s).

For the types and sizes of paper selectable, see 💷 P.54 "Acceptable copy paper".

### Tip

When the desired size or type of paper is not in any of the drawers or the Large Capacity Feeder, see the following pages.

P.56 "Setting copy paper (size change)"

P.72 "Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"

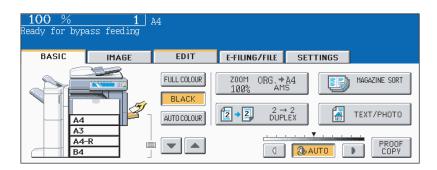
P.85 "Bypass Copying"

## **2** Place the original(s).

See the following pages to set the originals. P.68 "Acceptable originals" P.72 "Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"

The originals are copied in the order of being scanned.

# **3** Select the copy modes as required. When you want to copy more than one set, key in the desired number of copies.

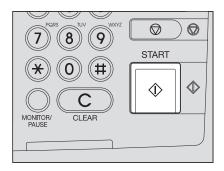


- Press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel to correct the number keyed in.
- Note that some combinations of copy modes are restricted. (P.389 "Copying Function Combination Matrix", P.391 "Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix")
- Once the [START] button on the control panel is pressed, any change in copy modes (including setting of the previously divided sets of originals) cannot be applied afterward.



## Press the [START] button.

Copying starts.

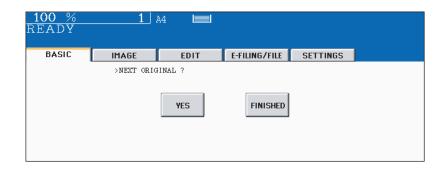


#### Tip

When you copy by placing originals on the original glass (e.g. using the sort mode, or making 1-sided original 2-sided copies), the data of these originals are scanned into the memory. In this case, proceed to steps 5 and 6.

## **5** Place the next original, and press the [START] button.

- Data scanning of this original starts.
- The next original will also be scanned in the same manner when you press the [YES] button on the touch panel, and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
- Repeat the above procedure until the scanning of the last page of the original finishes.
- 6 When scanning of all pages has finished, press the [FINISHED] button on the touch panel.



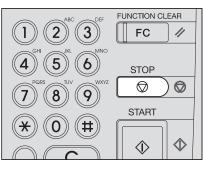
Copying starts. The paper exits with its copied side down.

- When the drawer runs out of paper during copying, the corresponding drawer on the touch panel and the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel blink. Add paper to this drawer or select another one with the same paper size.
- Be careful because the paper exit area and paper just after exiting are hot.

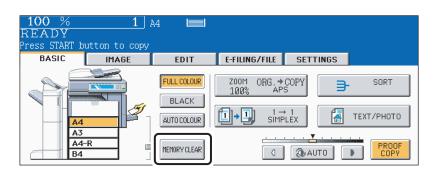
## Stopping the copying operation

Press the [STOP] button on the control panel to stop scanning or continuous copying.

**1** Press the [STOP] button on the control panel during scanning (or continuous copying).



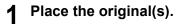
**2** When the following menu is displayed, press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button on the touch panel.



- If there is any copy job waiting, this job will start.
- During scanning: The data scanned up to then are deleted.
- During continuous copying: Copying stops and the data scanned up to then are deleted.

## Scanning the next originals during copying (Auto job start)

You can reserve a copy job by scanning the original during continuous copying or while "READY (WARMING UP)" appears.



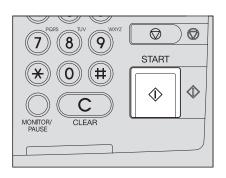


#### Tip

Note that the job starts in the copy modes of the previous job unless you set new ones particularly for this job.

3

## Press the [START] button on the control panel.

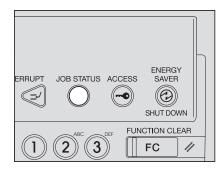


- Up to 10 jobs can be stored in the memory. When an 11th job is placed on the original glass or the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) and the [START] button is pressed, "Auto Start" appears on the touch panel.
- A maximum of 1000 LT sheets, or up until the memory becomes full can be accepted per 1 copy job. ( P.69 "Maximum number of sheets for scanning")

## Confirming and cancelling auto job

#### Confirming auto job and cancelling job in waiting

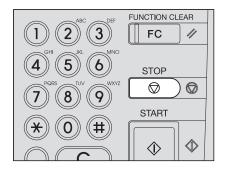
Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel to display the job list for confirming the set auto job and cancelling a job waiting to be copied. To cancel auto jobs, see 📖 P.264 "Deleting print jobs".



#### Cancelling auto job

Press the [STOP] button on the control panel to stop a job while originals are being scanned. To restart the job, press the [START] button. To clear the job, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. (However, the originals which have been scanned before the job is stopped are copied even though the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button is pressed.)

To cancel the 11th auto job, press the [STOP] button.



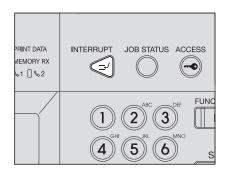
# Interrupt copying in progress and make other copies (Interrupt copying)

While continuous copying is in progress, you can interrupt this job with another copy job. The following features cannot be used together with interrupt copying:

- · Cover sheet copying
- · Sheet insertion copying
- Store to e-Filing / Copy & File
- Job build

# **1** Press the [INTERRUPT] button on the control panel.

The [INTERRUPT] button blinks first, then lights after "Job interrupted job 1 saved" appears.



#### Tip

When the [INTERRUPT] button is pressed while originals are being scanned, the [INTERRUPT] button blinks first. Then the button lights after "Job interrupted job 1 saved" appears when the scanning is finished.

**2** Replace the original with a new one.

Set other copy modes as required.

**3** Press the [START] button on the control panel.

# **4** After you have finished the interrupt copying, press the [INTER-RUPT] button again.

The message "READY to resume job 1" appears and the interrupted job resumes.

#### Tip

Interrupt copying is automatically cancelled after a certain period by automatic function clearing without the need to press the [INTERRUPT] button again. The interrupted job (= Job 1) resumes after this automatic function clearing.

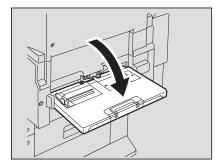
## Bypass copying

When you want to make copies on OHP film, sticker labels, or non-standard size paper, place the sheets of paper on the bypass tray. Bypass copying is also recommended for copying on standard size paper which is not in any of the drawers.

#### Tip

If you select the paper size, you can utilize various functions such as the automatic paper selection (APS) or the automatic magnification selection (AMS). For the details, see III P.389 "Copying Function Combination Matrix".

To carry out bypass copying, open the bypass tray.



The operating procedure of bypass copying differs depending on the paper size used. See the corresponding page for the operating procedure of each size. The table below shows these pages.

Pape	Paper size		
Standard size	A3, A4, B4, B5	🕮 P.86	
	Other than the above	🕮 P.89	
Others (Non-standard size	🛱 P.91		

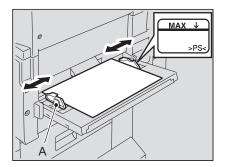
- Bypass copying stops when the paper placed on the bypass tray runs out during copying, even if the same size paper is in any of the drawers. Copying is resumed when paper is supplied to the bypass tray.
- When bypass copying has completed, the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button on the control panel blinks. Press this button to switch it to default copying using the drawers. (Bypass copying is automatically cancelled after a certain period by automatic function clearing without the need to press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button. The bypass copying returns to default copying using the drawers after this automatic function clearing.)

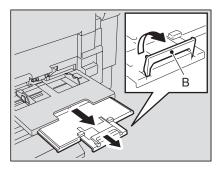
## Bypass copying on standard size paper

## Copying on A3, A4, B4 and B5 size paper

Place some sheets of paper with their copy side down on the bypass tray. Align the side guides to the paper length while holding A.

The message "Ready for bypass feeding" appears.



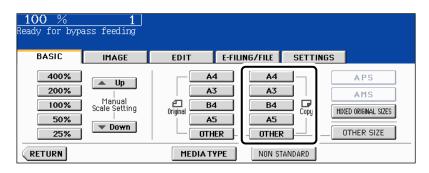


#### Tips

- Rear side of the side guides of the bypass tray has an indicator for paper height. The height of the sheets must not exceed this indicator.
- When you use more than one sheet, fan the sheets well before setting them on the tray.
- Do not push the sheets into the entrance of the bypass feeder; this may cause a paper jam.
- When the paper size is larger, draw out the three-stage paper holder. Raise B when you use A3 or a larger size of paper.

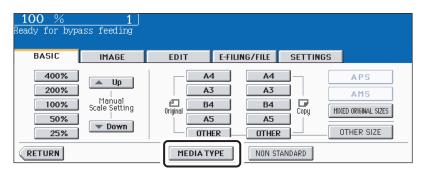
## **9** Place the original(s).

**3** Press the button of the same size as the one of the paper you have set on the tray.

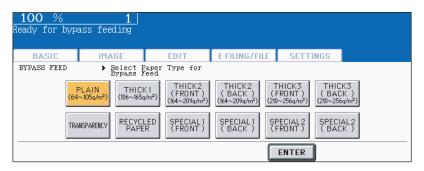


If the paper size is not specified here, some operations may slow down the copying.

**4** Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button on the touch panel if the media type of the paper you have set on the tray is other than plain paper.



**5** Press the button of the same media type as the one of the paper you have set on the tray, and then press the [ENTER] button on the touch panel.



- Set other copy modes as required.
- If a media type which is not same as the one you have set is selected here, this may cause a paper jam or significant image trouble.

#### Notes

When you want to make 1-sided copies on THICK2, THICK3, SPECIAL1 or SPECIAL2 paper, select (FRONT) for the paper. Select (BACK) for making 2-sided copies on that paper.

e.g.: When making a 2-sided copy on a THICK3 paper

- 1. Place a sheet of THICK3 paper on the bypass tray.
- 2. Select THICK3 (FRONT) and make a 1-sided copy.
- 3. Place the paper copied at step 2 on the bypass tray again with its blank side face down.

If you place the paper on the bypass tray with its top to bottom direction unchanged, the original is copied in 'open to left', and if you place it with its top to bottom direction changed, the original is copied in 'open to top'.

- 4. Select THICK3 (BACK) and make a copy.
  - When you want to make 2-sided copies on PLAIN, RECYCLED PAPER or THICK1, use the Automatic Duplexing Unit of the equipment.
  - OHP films cannot be copied 2-sided.
- The paper type which has been set can be confirmed with the touch panel.

%	1	$\underset{\bigstar}{\bigstar}_2$
for bypa	ass feeding	
SIC	IMAGE	EDIT

PLAIN		TRANSPARENCY	
THICK1	<b>★</b> 1	RECYCLED PAPER	¢¢
THICK2 (FRONT)	$\underset{\sim}{\star}_{2}$	SPECIAL1 (FRONT)	<b>[</b> ],
THICK2 (BACK)	A2	SPECIAL1 (BACK)	L71
THICK3 (FRONT)	×₃	SPECIAL2 (FRONT)	
THICK3 (BACK)	~3	SPECIAL2 (BACK)	LP2



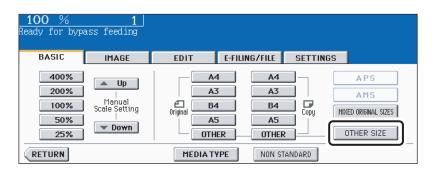
## 6 Press the [START] button on the control panel.

#### Tip

When you copy on OHP films, remove the copied OHP films, which have exited on to the receiving tray one by one. When the films pile up, they may become curled and may not be projected properly.

Copying on standard size paper other than A3, A4, B4 and B5

- **1** Place paper and original(s) by following step 1 and 2 in "Copying on A3, A4, B4 and B5 size paper" (A P.86).
- **2** Press the [OTHER SIZE] button on the touch panel.



**3** Press the button of the same size as the one of the paper you have set on the tray.

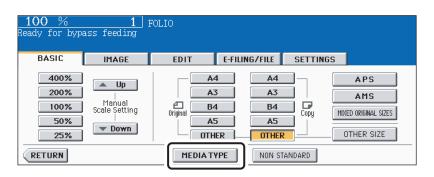
<u>100 %</u> READY	1 ;	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
OTHER SIZE	<ul> <li>Select a the OTHE</li> </ul>	, paper size for R button			
A3	A4[	A4-R AS	5-R B4	B5	B5-R
LD	LG		-R ST-R	13"LG	COMP
FOLIO	8.550	8K 10	5K 16K-R	A6-R	305×457 WIDE
CANCEL					

**A** Press the [OTHER] button for the copy size.

<u>100 %</u> Ready for bypa		FOLIO			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25%	Up Manual Scale Setting	Criginal A2 Original A5			APS AMS (ED ORIGINAL SIZES DTHER SIZE
RETURN		MEDIATY	/PE NON ST	ANDARD	

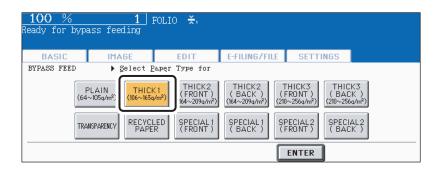
If the paper size is not specified here, some operations may slow down the copying.

# **5** Press the [MEDIA TYPE] button on the touch panel if the media type of the paper you have set on the tray is other than plain paper.



# 6 Press the button of the same media type as the one of the paper you have set on the tray, and then press the [ENTER] button on the touch panel.

E.g.: When Thick paper 1 is set



Set other copy modes as required.

#### Notes

- If a media type which is not same as the one you have set is selected here, this may cause a paper jam or significant image trouble.
- If the paper size is not specified here, some operations such as cleaning may slow down the copying.

#### Tip

The paper type which has been set can be confirmed with the touch panel. See the table in D P.86 "Bypass copying on standard size paper".

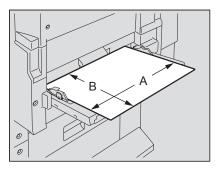
**7** Press the [START] button on the control panel.

#### Tip

When you copy on OHP films, remove the copied OHP films, which have exited on to the receiving tray one by one. When the films pile up, they may become curled and may not be projected properly.

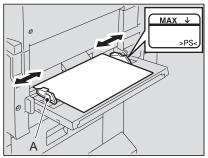
## Bypass copying on non-standard size paper

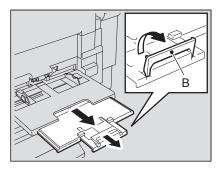
Non-standard size paper should be within the following ranges: A (Length): 100 to 297 mm, B (Width): 148 to 432 mm



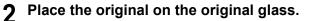
**1** Place some sheets of paper with their copy side down on the bypass tray. Align the side guides to the paper length while holding A.

The message "Ready for bypass feeding" appears.





- Rear side of the side guides of the bypass tray has an indicator for paper height. The height of the sheets must not exceed this indicator.
- When you use more than one sheet, fan the sheets well before setting them on the tray.
- Do not push the sheets into the entrance of the bypass feeder; it may cause a paper jam.
- When the paper size is larger, draw out the three-stage paper holder. Raise B when you use A3 or a larger size of paper.



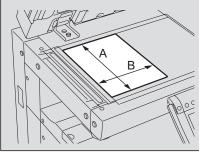
## **3** Press the [NON STANDARD] button on the touch panel.

100 % Ready for byp	<u>1</u> ass feeding				_
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25%	Up Manual Scale Setting	4 0riginal 0TH	3         A3           4         B4           5         A5		A P S AMS IXED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE
RETURN		MEDIATY	PE NON ST	ANDARD	

# 4 Set each dimension following the procedure below.

The [Length] and [Width] are indicated as follows: A: [Length]

B: [Width]



#### Using the digital keys

Key in the value in [Length] and press the [SET] button on the touch panel. Set the width in the same way and press the [ENTER] button.

100 % 1 A3 Ready for bypass feeding						
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS		
MEMORY 1	Enter the Paper Size           MEMORY 1         MEMORY 2         Length         : 279         Mm         SET					
MEMORY 3	MEMORY 4	Width :		ENTER		

#### Recalling dimensions registered in the memory

Press the desired memory number button from [MEMORY 1] to [MEMORY 4] to recall the dimension data registered previously, and then press the [ENTER] button.

<b>100 %</b> Ready for bypa		A3			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	Enter the	Paper Size			
MEMORY 1	MEMORY 2		100 mm — [	SET	
MEMORY 3	MEMORY 4	Width :	148 mm	RESET	MEMORY
CANCEL					

- Set other copy modes as required.
- Paper size that can be set is as follows: Length: 100 mm to 297 mm Width: 148 mm to 432 mm
- To register the dimension data in the memory, see 🛄 P.94 "Registering non-standard size in the memory".
- **5** Press the [START] button on the control panel.

Registering non-standard size in the memory

- **1** Follow steps 1 to 3 on "Bypass copying on non-standard size paper" (
- Press the memory number button (from [MEMORY 1] to [MEMORY 4]) you want to register the dimension.

<b>100 %</b> Ready for byp		A3			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
MEMORY 1 MEMORY 3	Enter the MEMORY 2 MEMORY 4		100 mm — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —	SET RESET	MEMORY
			CANCEL	ENTER	

**3** Key in each dimension, and press the [MEMORY] button on the touch panel.

<u>100 %</u> Ready for bypa		A3			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
MEMORY 1 MEMORY 3	Enter the MEMORY 2 MEMORY 4		100 mm	SET RESET	MEMORY
			CANCEL	ENTER	

- Key in its length in [Length] and press the [SET] button on the touch panel. Set its width in the same manner.
- Paper size that can be set is as follows: Length: 100 mm to 297 mm Width: 148 mm to 432 mm

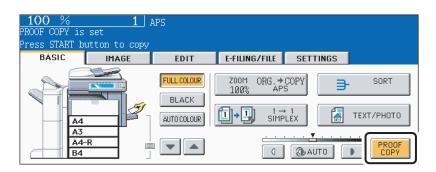
## **Proof Copy**

This function allows you to check that the copy density, zoom and margin width, etc. are properly set by making only one set of copies.

You can prevent miscopying by using this function before committing yourself to mass-copying.

#### Notes

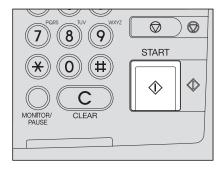
- The setting of the number of copy sets, time stamp and stapling (when the optional Finisher has been installed) can be changed after having made the proof copy.
- Press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button to clear the proof copy before changing the setting of the zoom or copy density, etc. When you make copies again after changing the settings, the data of the originals need to be scanned.
  - Place paper in the drawer(s).
  - **9** Place the original(s).
  - **3** Select the copy modes as required.
  - Press the [PROOF COPY] button.



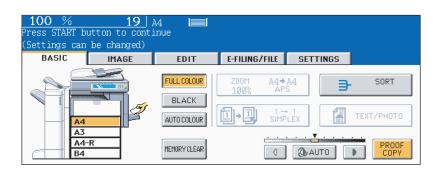
- "PROOF COPY is set Press START button to copy" appears. (for approx. 2 sec.)
- · Copy modes except for some such as sort/group can be set.

## **5** Press the [START] button.

The data scanning of the originals is started and one set of copies is made.



## **6** Change the settings as required.



- The setting of the number of copy sets, time stamp, stapling (when the optional Finisher has been installed) and sort can be changed.
- If you want to change the setting of the copy density, original mode, zoom or simplex/ duplex, press the [MEMORY CLEAR] button to clear the proof copy. After the change, perform the instructions from step 1 again.

## **7** Press the [START] button.

If the number of copy sets is not changed in step 6, one less than the previously specified number is copied. However, if "1" is specified for the number of copy sets, one set of copies is made.

# 3

# SETTING OF BASIC COPY MODES

This chapter describes the basic useful copying functions including Enlargement and Reduction Copying, Selecting Finishing Modes, Duplex Copying and such.

Paper Selection	98
Automatic Paper Selection (APS)	
Manual paper selection	
Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original size)	101
Switching Colour Mode	103
Enlargement and Reduction Copying	104
Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS)	
Specifying both original size and copy size separately	106
Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons	108
Selecting Finishing Modes	110
Type of finishing mode	
Name of each part in the Finisher (optional)	
Sort/Group copying	
Rotate sort mode	
Staple sort mode	
Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)	
Hole punch mode (optional) Manual stapling (MJ-1101 only)	
Duplex Copying	
1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)	
1-sided original -> 2-sided copy	
2-sided original -> 2-sided copy	
2-sided original -> 1-sided copy	
Book-type original -> 2-sided copy	130
Original Mode	134
Copy Density Adjustment	136
Automatic copy density mode	
Manual copy density mode	137

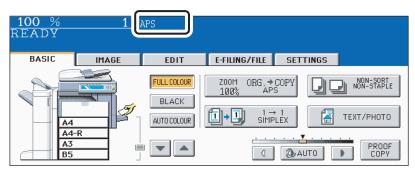
## **Paper Selection**

## **Automatic Paper Selection (APS)**

When you place standard size originals on the original glass or the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional), the size of the originals is automatically detected, which helps the equipment select paper that is the same size as the originals.

#### Tips

- The automatic paper selection may not work correctly depending on the type of the originals. In that case, select the paper size manually.(
   P.100 "Manual paper selection")
- For original sizes available for automatic paper selection, see 🛄 P.68 "Acceptable originals".
  - Place paper in the drawer(s).
  - **2** Place the original(s).
  - **3** Confirm that automatic paper selection has been selected on the basic menu.



- Automatic paper selection is selected by default at the installation of the equipment.
- If "Change direction of original" or "CHANGE DRAWER TO CORRECT PAPER SIZE" appears, perform the action accordingly.
- Set other copy modes as required.

## Tip

Even if the direction of the paper set in the selected drawer differs from that of the original, the equipment rotates the data of the original by 90 degrees to make copies as long as their sizes are the same. (This works on A4 paper only.) For example, when an A4 original is set vertically and A4-R paper is placed in the drawer, the data of A4 original will be rotated and copied correctly on A4-R paper.

#### When automatic paper selection is not selected

(1) Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 📕		
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100% ORG.→ SIMP	
A4- A3 B5				AUTO

(2) Press the [APS] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	▲ Up Manual Scale Setting ▼ Down		3         A3           4         B4           5         A5		APS ATS XED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE

**4** Press the [START] button.

## Manual paper selection

Automatic paper selection cannot be selected for the following originals because their sizes are not detected correctly. Select the paper size manually for these originals.

- Highly transparent originals (e.g. OHP film, tracing paper)
- · Wholly dark originals or originals with dark borders
- Non-standard size originals (e.g. newspapers, magazines)

#### Tip

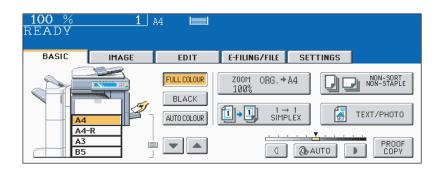
When the desired size of paper is not set in any of the drawers, place this size of paper in the selected drawer or place the paper on the bypass tray manually. (IP P.56 "Placing paper in the drawer", IP P.85 "Bypass Copying")

## Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using the bypass tray, be sure to specify the paper size.

**2** Place the original(s).

# **3** Press the drawer button representing the desired paper size on the touch panel.



- You can use the paper source selection (
- Set other copy modes as required.
- **4** Press the [START] button.

## Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original size)

You can copy a set of originals whose sizes are individually different, using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional), by pressing the [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZE] button.

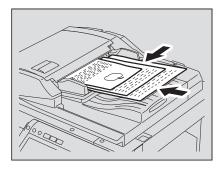
Tips

- This mixed original size setting is available only in the following combinations. A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, FOLIO
- Note that the copied image may become skewed depending on the combination of originals.

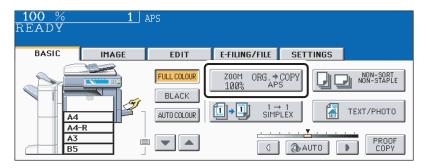
**1** Place paper in the drawer(s). Bypass copying is not available.

2 Adjust the side guides to the widest original, and then align the original against the guide at the front side.

Place the originals face up.



**3** Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button to enter the setting menu of the original or paper size.



## **A** Press the [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25%	Up Hanual Scale Setting Down	A Original A OTH	3 A3 4 B4 5 A5	<u></u>	A P S A M S KED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE

# **5** Select either automatic paper selection (APS) or automatic magnification selection (AMS).

Automatic paper selection: Copies on the same size of paper as that of originals (P.98).

Automatic magnification selection: Copies all in one size (

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 i	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	Up Manual Scale Setting	A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	A3           4           5           A5		A PS AMS

- Before you use automatic paper selection, be sure that all paper sizes corresponding to the original sizes have been set in the drawers.
- In automatic magnification selection, the copies cannot be enlarged from A4 (portrait)/ B5 (portrait) to A3 (landscape)/B4 (landscape).
- If "Change direction of original" appears when [AMS] is used with [MIXED ORIGINAL SIZES], change the direction according to the message.
- Set other copy modes as required.

## 6 Press the [START] button.

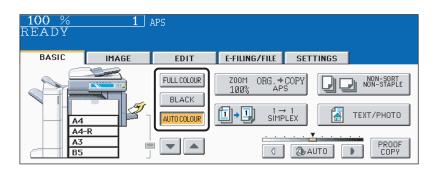
This function allows you to switch colour modes. There are three types of colour modes as follows:

FULL COLOUR: All originals are copied in full colour regardless of the type of each original.

**BLACK:** All originals are copied in black regardless of the type of each original. (Default setting)

AUTO COLOUR: The equipment automatically judges the type of each original. Coloured originals are copied in full colour and black-and-white originals are copied in black.

**1** Press the [FULL COLOUR], [BLACK] or [AUTO COLOUR] button.



#### Tip

When you use "AUTO COLOUR", note the following points:

When the coloured area in an original is extremely small, when the colours of the original are close to black, or when the colours of an original are too light, these originals may be automatically copied in black even though they are coloured. Also yellowed originals or originals with a coloured background may be automatically copied in full colour even though they are black-and-white. Select the full colour mode or the black mode depending on the state of the original to reproduce exact colours.

## **Enlargement and Reduction Copying**

You can enlarge or reduce the size of copies by means of the following procedures.

- Specifying the copy paper size in advance so that the equipment will detect the original size and automatically select the most appropriate reproduction ratio for the copy paper size (= automatic magnification selection)
- Specifying both original size and copy paper size separately
- · Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons

#### Tip

The enlargement/reduction ratio available differs depending on whether the originals have been set on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional).

On the original glass: 25 to 400%

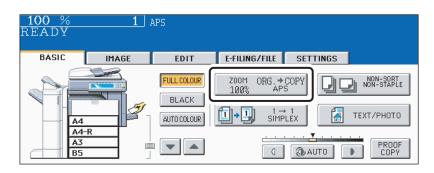
On the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder: 25 to 200%

## **Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS)**

#### Notes

- The automatic magnification selection cannot be selected for the following originals. Set their reproduction ratios in other ways.
  - Highly transparent originals (e.g. OHP film, tracing paper)
  - Wholly dark originals or originals with dark borders
  - Non-standard size originals (e.g. newspapers, magazines)
- For the original sizes available for this automatic magnification selection, see P.68 "Acceptable originals".
- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

## **2** Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.



## **3** Press the button representing the desired copy paper size.

E.g.: When A4-size paper is selected

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 ;	A4 🔲			_
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	▲ Up Manual Scale Setting ↓ ▼ Down	Criginal A:	3         A3           4         B4           5         A5		APS AMS XED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE

The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.

## **4** Press the [AMS] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25%	Up Manual Scale Setting	A3 A4 Original B5 OTH	4 A4 4 B4 5 B5		APS AMS DTHER SIZE
RETURN					

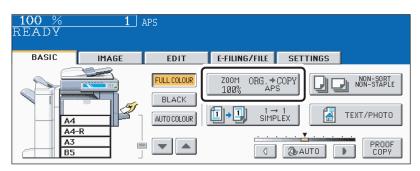
## **5** Place the original(s).

- When the original is placed, the equipment detects the original size, then computes and displays the most appropriate reproduction ratio for the specified copy paper size.
- If "Change direction of original" appears, make the change accordingly.
- Set other copy modes as required.
- In Rotate Sort mode all copies are delivered to the receiving tray.

## 6 Press the [START] button.

## Specifying both original size and copy size separately

- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.



## **4** Specify the original size and copy paper size.

**Original size:** Press the size button representing the same size as that of the set original.

**Copy paper size:** Press the size button representing the desired copy paper size. E.g.: When A3 for the original size and A4 for the copy paper size are selected

<u>71 %</u> READY	1 .	M4 📕
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT E-FILING/FILE SETTINGS
400% 200% 100% 50% 25%	▲ Up Manual Scale Setting ↓ Down	A4     A4       A3     A3       A3     A3       B4     B4       Copy     Hixed ORIGINAL SIZES       OTHER     OTHER
RETURN		

- The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.
- When the original size and copy paper size have been specified, the enlargement/ reduction ratio is computed and displayed on the touch panel.
- Set other copy modes as required.

#### Tip

When the original or copy paper is a standard size other than A3, A4, B4 or B5, you need to register this paper size in the selections of the [OTHER] button in advance. See "When a standard size paper other than A3, A4, B4 and B5 is set" below for the registration.

## **5** Press the [START] button.

#### When a standard size paper other than A3, A4, B4 and B5 is set

Register the size of the placed paper to the [OTHER] button with the following procedure. The registered paper size is automatically selected when the [OTHER] button is pressed.

#### **1** Press the [OTHER SIZE] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	▲ Up Manual Scale Setting ▼ Down	Ar Ai Original As OTH	3         A3           4         B4           5         A5		APS AMS KED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE

**2** Press the paper size button corresponding to the paper that has been set.

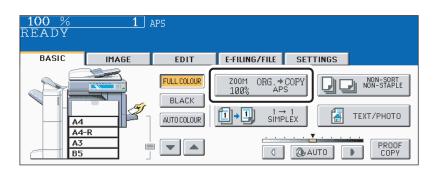
<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
OTHER SIZE	<ul> <li>Select a the OTHE</li> </ul>	, paper size for R button			
A3	A4	A4-R AS	5-R B4	B5	B5-R
LD	LG		-R ST-R	13"LG	COMP
FOLIO	8.550	8K 10	5K 16K-R	A6-R	305×457 WIDE
CANCEL					

#### **3** Press the [OTHER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	FOLIO 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	Hanual Scale Setting	A. Criginal Original OTH	3 A3 4 B4 5 AE		A P S AMS XED ORIGINAL SIZES OTHER SIZE

#### Using the zoom buttons or the one-touch zoom buttons

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **?** Press the Enlargement/Reduction ([ZOOM...]) button.



#### Press the following buttons to set the desired reproduction ratio. A: Zoom ( \_\_\_\_ ) buttons

The reproduction ratio changes by 1% every time it is pressed. When you hold down either of them, the ratio goes up or down automatically.

#### B: One-touch zoom buttons

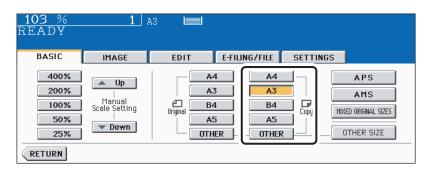
You can select the ratio from [400%], [200%], [100%], [50%] and [25%].

The maximum ratio when the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) is used is 200%.

	<u>103 %</u> READY	1	A4 📕			
^	BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
А —	400% 200% 100% 50% 25% RETURN	A Up 	Criginal AS	3         A3           4         B4           5         A5		APS AMS KED ORIGINAL SIZES

**5** Press the button representing the desired copy paper size.

E.g.: When A3-size paper is selected



- The copy paper size can also be set by pressing the drawer button on the touch panel.
- Set other copy modes as required.



#### **Selecting Finishing Modes**

#### Type of finishing mode

The available finishing modes differ depending on the type of finishing device installed (MJ-1030, MJ-1101, MJ-6004 or MJ-6101). Check the available finishing modes with the table below.

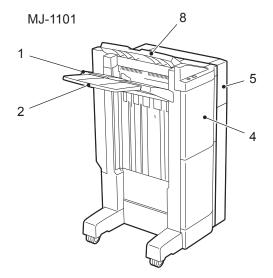
Yes: Available No: Not available

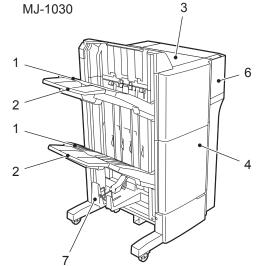
	Type of finishing mode								
Finishing device	Sort/ Group	Rotate sort	Staple sort	Maga- zine sort	Maga- zine sort & Saddle stitch	Saddle stitch	Hole punch		
MJ-1030 + MJ-6004	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes		
MJ-1030	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No		
MJ-1101 + MJ-6101	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes		
MJ-1101	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No		
No finishing device	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No		

MJ-1030: Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1101: Finisher MJ-6004: Hole Punch Unit (for MJ-1030) MJ-6101: Hole Punch Unit (for MJ-1101)

#### Name of each part in the Finisher (optional)

- 1. Tray
- 2. Sub-tray
- 3. Upper cover
- 4. Front cover
- 5. Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6101)
- 6. Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6004)
- 7. Saddle stitch tray
- 8. Fixed tray





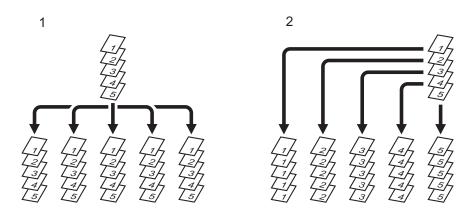


#### Sort/Group copying

To make multiple copies, select the sort mode or the group mode as required.

(Example of making 5 sets of copies from 5 original sheets)

- 1. Sort copying
- 2. Group copying



#### Tip

When you use the A3 or B4 size copy paper, pull out the sub-tray in advance. The copied paper may fall or may not be sorted properly without the sub-tray.

- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).

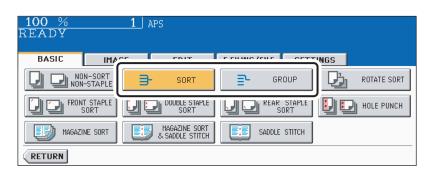
#### **3** Press the finisher button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR       BLACK       AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.+ 100% AP		NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
A4- A3 B5				алто [	PROOF COPY

#### Tip

When the original is placed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional), the sort mode is automatically selected.

#### **4** Press the [SORT] (or [GROUP]) button.



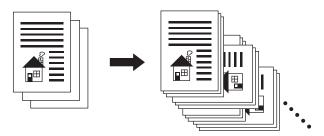
Set other copy modes as required.

**5** Press the [START] button.

#### Rotate sort mode

In the rotate sort mode, one set of copies is made to exit on another set of copies, being alternated lengthwise or crosswise.

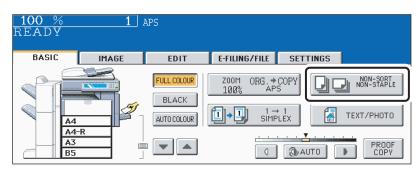
The available paper sizes for this mode is A4/A4-R. Set the A4/A4-R size paper in the drawers in advance. Paper exits to the inner tray in this mode.



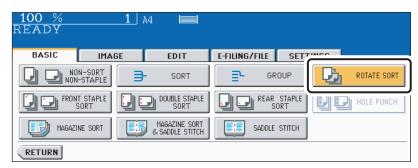
#### Notes

- This mode cannot be used with automatic paper selection.
- The receiving tray loading capacity is approx. 550 sheets (90 g/m<sup>2</sup>), which may vary depending on the condition of paper curl.
  - **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
  - **2** Place the original(s).

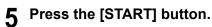
#### **3** Press the finisher button on the basic menu.



**4** Press the [ROTATE SORT] button.



Set other copy modes as required.



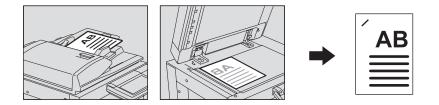
#### Staple sort mode

When the Finisher (optional) is installed, automatic stapling is enabled. You can select the stapling position from three types.

#### Notes

- Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for stapling.
- Copies in different size cannot be stapled. (When the lengths of the copies are the same, they can be stapled even if their sizes are different.)

(Example of selecting the [FRONT STAPLE] button)

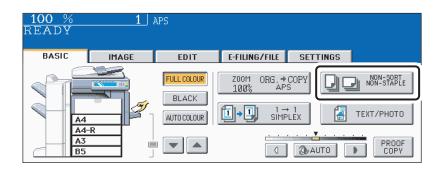


#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (  $\square$  P.85 "Bypass Copying")

**2** Place the original(s).

#### **3** Press the finisher button on the basic menu.



#### **4** Press the [FRONT STAPLE] (or [DOUBLE STAPLE] or [REAR STA-PLE]) button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	N-SORT	- SORT	GR GR	OUP	ROTATE SORT
		DOUBLE STAPLE SORT	REAR S		HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZI	NE SORT	& SADDLE STITCH	SADDLE	STITCH	
RETURN					

Set other copy modes as required.

#### **5** Press the [START] button.

Tip

If the paper quantity exceeds the maximum number of sheets that can be stapled, the Finisher automatically enters the sort mode.

#### Maximum number of sheets for stapling

- For the tray loading capacity, see 📖 P.384 "Specifications of Options"
- Two covers of 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup> can be added. In this case, the covers are included in the
  maximum number of sheets that can be stapled.

#### Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1030)/Finisher (MJ-1101)

A4, B5	Plain paper, Recycled paper	64 - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	50 sheets
	Plain paper	81 - 90 g/m <sup>2</sup>	30 sheets <sup>*1</sup>
		91 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	30 sheets *2
A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO	Plain paper, Recycled paper	64 - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	30 sheets
	Plain paper	80 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	15 sheets

\*1 MJ-1030: 26 sheets

\*2 MJ-1030: 24 sheets

#### Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)

In the magazine sort mode, more than one original can be copied and bound like magazines or booklets. Also, a set of copied sheets can be automatically folded and stapled at its centre when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. The available copy paper sizes for these modes are A3, A4-R and B4.

The paper weight applicable for this mode is  $64 \text{ g/m}^2$  to  $105 \text{ g/m}^2$ .

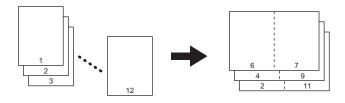
#### Note

Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for saddle stitching.

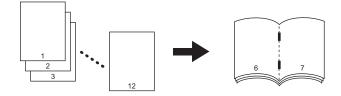
#### Tip

When placing portrait originals horizontal to you in the magazine sort mode, set the Image Direction in the edit menu. Otherwise the originals will not be copied in the proper page order. (I P.193 "IMAGE DIRECTION")

1. When [MAGAZINE SORT] is selected



2. When [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] is selected



3. When [SADDLE STITCH] is selected



You can select the magazine sort mode from the edit menu, as well as from the basic menu. When this mode is selected from the edit menu, you can adjust the binding margin of the copy. To select this mode from the edit menu, see  $\square$  P.171 "MAGAZINE SORT".

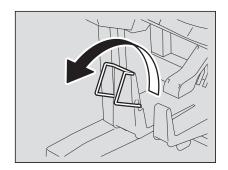
#### Place paper in the drawer(s).

#### **2** Select the paper size.

- Available copy paper sizes are A3, A4-R and B4.
- For bypass copying, see P.85 "Bypass Copying".

#### Tip

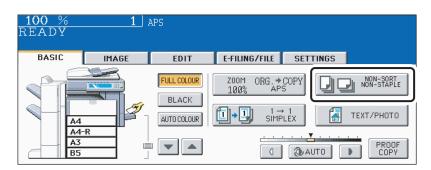
To use the saddle stitch mode for A3 or B4-size paper, lift the stopper of the saddle stitch tray.



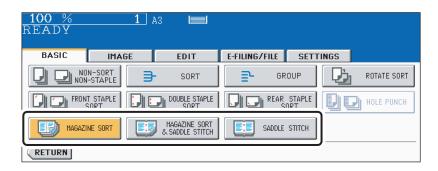
#### **3** Place the original(s).

- When placing originals on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, see the illustrations ( P.118) for the proper page order of the copies.
- When placing originals on the original glass, follow the procedure below.
  - When [MAGAZINE SORT] or [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] is selected: Place the first page of the originals first.
  - When [SADDLE STITCH] is selected: In case of 12-page originals, set them in the order of pages 12-1, 2-11, 10-3, 4-9, 8-5, then 6-7.

#### ▲ Press the finisher button on the basic menu.



# **5** Press the [MAGAZINE SORT] (or [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] or [SADDLE STITCH] button.



- The [MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH] button and the [SADDLE STITCH] button are selectable only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher is installed.
- Set other copy modes as required.

#### 6 Press the [START] button.

When placing the originals on the original glass, follow the procedure in  $\square$  P.70 "Placing originals on the glass".

#### Available conditions for saddle stitching

Paper weight	Saddle stitch tray loading capacity				
Faper weight	11 - 15 sheets	6 - 10 sheets	5 sheets or less		
64 g/m <sup>2</sup>	10 sets	20 sets	25 sets		
80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	10 sets	20 sets	25 sets		
90 g/m <sup>2 *1</sup>	-	15 sets	25 sets		
105 g/m <sup>2 *1</sup>	-	15 sets	25 sets		

Available paper sizes are A3, A4-R and B4.

\*1 When the cover is added, the tray loading capacity is always 5 sets.

#### Tips

- One cover of 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup> can be added. In this case, this cover is included in the maximum number of sheets that can have saddle stitching.
- When paper of a different weight is loaded, count the number of sheets for saddle stitching as applied to the paper with the highest weight.

#### Hole punch mode (optional)

When the Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed to the finisher (optional), you can punch holes in the copies.

- The available copy paper sizes for this mode are A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R and FOLIO.
- The paper weight applicable for this mode is 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 256 g/m<sup>2</sup>.

Note

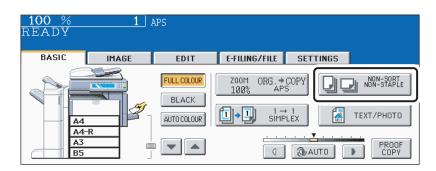
Special paper such as OHP films or sticker label cannot be used for hole punching.

#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (P.85 "Bypass Copying")

#### **2** Place the original(s).

#### **3** Press the finisher button on the basic menu.



#### **A** Press the [HOLE PUNCH] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY		<u>1</u> AP	S				
BASIC	IMAGE		EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SET1	INGS	
	N-SORT -STAPLE	€	SORT		ROUP		ROTATE SORT
	T STAPLE	]0	DOUBLE STAPLE SORT		R STAPLE SORT		HOLE PUNCH
MAGAZI	NE SORT		MAGAZINE SORT & SADDLE STITCH	SADDI	.e stitch		
RETURN							

Set other copy modes as required.

**5** Press the [START] button.

#### Number of punch holes and available paper sizes

Since the number of punch holes and the distance between the holes vary depending on the country/region, purchase a hole punch unit that meets your requirements. (For details, consult your service technician.)

	Number of punch holes and hole diameter	Available paper sizes
MJ-6004E, MJ-6101E	2 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD,
(Japan and most of Europe)	(6.5 mm dia.)	LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
MJ-6004N, MJ-6101N	2/3 holes switchable	2 holes: A4-R, LG, LT-R
(North America)	(8.0 mm dia.)	3 holes: A3, A4, LD, LT
MJ-6004F, MJ-6101F	4 holes	A3, A4, LD, LT
(France)	(6.5 mm dia.; 80 mm dia.)	
MJ-6004S, MJ-6101S	4 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD,
(Sweden)	(6.5 mm dia.; 70 mm dia. and 21mm pitch)	LG, LT-R, COMP

#### Manual stapling (MJ-1101 only)

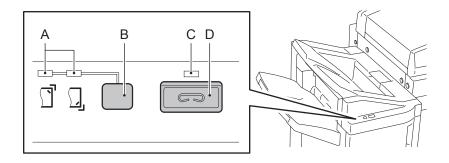
The manual stapling function which enables you to use the staple function without making copies is available in the Finisher (MJ-1101, optional). This function is useful when copies are made without stapling being set or when you want to staple originals.

A: Stapling position lamps C:

C: Manual-stapling lamp

B: [Stapling position] button

D: [Manual-stapling] button



#### Press the [Manual-stapling] button.

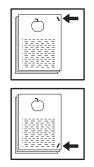
The shutter in the paper exit area is opened.

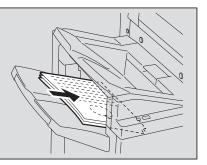
**2** Press the [Stapling position] button to switch the stapling position. Stapling positions are the front and the other end.

The stapling position lamp corresponding to the selected stapling position lights in green.

#### **3** Place paper in the lower tray of the finisher.

Jog the paper well and place it with its face down. Place the paper in front to have it stapled in the front, and in the other end to have it stapled in the other end.





Tip

Check that the manual-stapling lamp lights in green. If not, place the paper again.

**4 Release the paper and press the [Manual-stapling] button.** The stapling position lamp blinks when the stapling is completed. Remove the paper.

Note

Be sure to release the paper before the manual stapling.

#### Tips

- Operation can be continued while the manual-stapling lamp lights. If no operation is performed for approx. 15 min., the manual stapling operation is stopped.
- If you want to stop the manual stapling operation during setting, remove paper and press the [Manual-stapling] and [Stapling position] buttons simultaneously. The shutter in the paper exit area is closed and the operation of the manual stapling is finished.

#### Specification

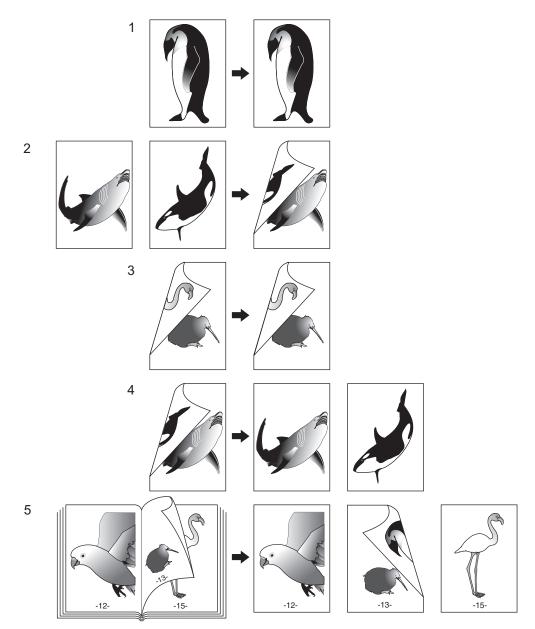
Acceptable paper size	LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP, 13" LG, 8.5" SQ, 8K, 16K, A3, A4, A4-R, B4
Maximum number of sheets for stapling	50 sheets (LT, 8.5" SQ, 16K, A4: 17 - 20 lb. Bond) 30 sheets (LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, 13" LG, 8K, A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO: 17 - 20 lb. Bond) 30 sheets (LT, 8.5" SQ, 16K, A4: 21 - 28 lb. Bond) 15 sheets (LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, 13" LG, 8K, A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO: 21 - 28
	lb. Bond)
Stapling position	Front, Rear

#### **Duplex Copying**

The following 5 combinations are available for duplex copying.

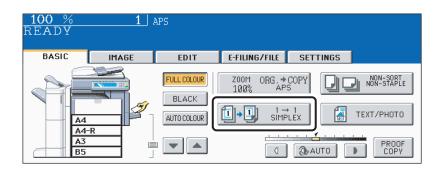
- 1. 1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)
- 2. 1-sided original -> 2-sided copy
- 3. 2-sided original -> 2-sided copy
- 4. 2-sided original -> 1-sided copy
- 5. Book-type original -> 2-sided copy

Duplex copying is available for plain paper (64 g/m<sup>2</sup> to  $105g/m^2$ ).



#### 1-sided original -> 1-sided copy (default setting at installation)

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Confirm that the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu is [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX].



If [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX] is not shown, press the simplex/duplex button to display the next menu, and then press the [1 -> 1 SIMPLEX] button on that menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 i	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	+] 1→1 SIMPLE> 2→1 SPLIT		$1 \rightarrow 2$ DUPLEX $2 \rightarrow 2$ DUPLEX	Book→	2
			CANCEL		

Set other copy modes as required.

#### **▲** Press the [START] button.

#### 1-sided original -> 2-sided copy

When you copy 1-sided portrait originals to 2-sided copies, you can make a booklet-type copy in the direction of "open to left" opening, using the image direction mode in the edit menu. ( P.193 "IMAGE DIRECTION")

#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. ( P.85 "Bypass Copying")

#### **2** Place the original(s).

#### **3** Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.+ 100% AP		NON-STAPLE
A4 A3 B5				<u>.</u> (Ф. АИТО)	PROOF COPY

**4** Press the [1 -> 2 DUPLEX] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	1 → 1 SIMPLE SIMPLE		$1 \rightarrow 2$ DUPLEX $2 \rightarrow 2$ DUPLEX	Book →	2
			CANCEL		

Set other copy modes as required.

#### **5** Press the [START] button.

When placing an original on the original glass, follow steps 5 to 6 of  $\square$  P.79 "Placing an original on the original glass" continuously.

#### 2-sided original -> 2-sided copy

#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. (  $\square$  P.85 "Bypass Copying")

**2** Place the original(s).

#### **3** Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100% ORG.→ AP:		NON-SOBT NON-STAPLE
A4 A3 B5				<b>@</b> AUTO	PROOF COPY

#### **4** Press the [2 -> 2 DUPLEX] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
Ē	I→1 SIMPLE	x <b>1+2</b>	1 → 2 DUPLEX	Book→	2
[2	2→1 SPLIT	2+2	2 → 2 DUPLEX		
			CANCEL		

Set other copy modes as required.

#### **5** Press the [START] button.

When placing an original on the original glass, follow steps 5 to 6 of  $\square$  P.79 "Placing an original on the original glass" continuously.

#### 2-sided original -> 1-sided copy

When a 2-sided 'open to left' (Book) portrait original is copied using the image direction mode in the edit menu with [2-Sided Originals to 1-Sided Copies], copies can be adjusted to the same direction. (

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
A4 A4 A3 B5	R	FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.+ 100% ORG.+ 100% ORG.+ 1− simp		NON-STAPLE

#### ▲ Press the [2 -> 1 SPLIT] button.

00 % CADY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	]→IJ 1→1 SIMPLE	<b>1</b> →2	1 → 2 DUPLEX	Book→	2
12	P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P P	2+2	2 → 2 DUPLEX		
			CANCEL		

Set other copy modes as required.

#### **5** Press the [START] button.

#### Book-type original -> 2-sided copy

You can make a booklet-type copy in the same page configuration in which the original is. The acceptable paper size for this function is A4 or B5 only.

#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, specify the paper size in advance. ( P.85 "Bypass Copying")

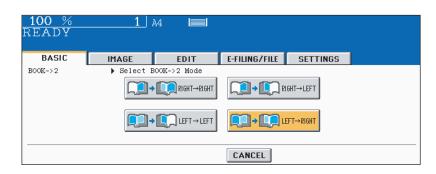
#### **2** Press the simplex/duplex button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
A4 A4 A3 B5	R	FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR			NON-SORT TEXT/PHOTO

**3** Press the [BOOK -> 2] button.

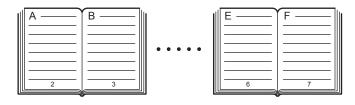
<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	1 → 1 SIMPLE2		$1 \rightarrow 2$ DUPLEX	Dook →	2
			CANCEL		

#### **4** Select the book copying type.



Press the [RIGHT -> RIGHT] button (= default setting at the installation) if copying should start at a right-hand page and end at a right-hand page. Other copying types are selectable by pressing any of the [RIGHT -> LEFT], [LEFT -> LEFT] and [LEFT -> RIGHT] buttons.

e.g.: If pages 2 to 6 of a book which opens to the left are to be copied, select [LEFT -> RIGHT].



The yellow indicator line for booklet copying moves to the centre of the original glass.

#### **5** Select A4 or B5 copy size.

Only A4 or B5 size is available. Press the drawer button on the touch panel, or use the paper source selection ( ) buttons to select A4 or B5 size.

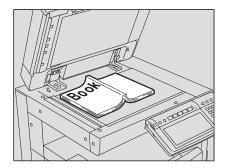
E.g.: When A4-size paper is selected

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	200M ORG.→ 100% Book →		NON-STAFLE
A3 B5					PROOF COPY

- If you need a binding space, select the book margin mode. (
   P.157 "IMAGE SHIFT")
- Set other copy modes as required.

# 6 Open and place the first page(s) on the original glass.

Centre the booklet on the yellow indicator line with its bottom toward you.



#### Caution

Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

# 7 Press the [START] button. When the data of the opened pages have been scanned, open the next page and set the booklet on the original glass again.

Repeat the procedures above until all the desired pages have been scanned. If the last copy is only a single page, press the [COPY FINAL PAGE] button on the touch panel before the scanning of this page is started.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
Place next or select one of	ginal and press the following	START or	FINISHED		

8 When all the pages have been scanned, press the [FINISHED] button on the touch panel.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
Place next or select one of	sinal and press the following	COPY FINAL PAGE	FINISHED	]	

- The scanned pages will be copied.
- For setting image shift, see P.161 "Creating a bookbinding margin".

#### **Original Mode**

You can make copies with optimal image quality by selecting the following modes for your original.

The selectable original mode differs depending on the colour mode ( $\square$  P.103). Switch the colour mode first, and then select the original mode.

Full colour	
TEXT/PHOTO:	Originals with text and photographs mixed (Default setting)
TEXT:	Originals with text (or text and line art) only
PHOTO:	Originals with general photographs on photographic printing paper
PRINTED IMAGE:	Originals with photogravure (e.g. Magazine, brochure)
MAP:	Originals with fine illustrations or text

#### Black

TEXT/PHOTO:	Originals with text and photographs mixed (Default setting)
TEXT:	Originals with text (or text and line art) only
PHOTO:	Originals with photographs
IMAGE SMOOTHING:	Originals with text and photographs mixed, especially originals
	requiring higher reproducibility on photos

#### Auto colour

TEXT/PHOTO:	Originals with text and photographs mixed
TEXT:	Originals with text (or text and line art) only
PRINTED IMAGE:	Originals with photogravure (e.g. Magazine, brochure)

#### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the original mode button on the basic menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100% AP		NON-STAPLE TEXT/PHOTO
A3 B5				анто (	PROOF COPY

# **4** Select and press the button for the most appropriate original mode for your original.

The selectable original mode differs depending on the colour mode as follows.

#### Full colour

100 % READY	1 ;	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	🚪 техт/рното		TEXT	РНОТО	
	PRINTED IMAG	E	MAP		
			CANCEL		

#### Black

<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	TEXT/PHOTO		TEXT	РНОТО	
			CANCEL		

#### Auto colour

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 i	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	🔚 ТЕХТ/РНОТС		TEXT	PRINTED IM	AGE
			CANCEL		

Set other copy modes as required.

**5** Press the [START] button.

#### **Copy Density Adjustment**

There are 2 types of copy density adjustment: the automatic copy density mode and the manual copy density mode. In the automatic copy density mode, the equipment automatically selects the most appropriate copy density by detecting the density of the original. In the manual copy density mode, you can adjust the copy density manually according to the conditions of the original.

#### Tip

Default setting: Manual density mode for "FULL COLOUR" / "AUTO COLOUR", Automatic density mode for "BLACK"

#### Automatic copy density mode

- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Full colour / Auto colour: Press the [AUTO] button. Black: Confirm that the [AUTO] button is selected. If it is not, press the button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100% AP:		NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
A4- A3 B5	-R			AUTO	PROOF COPY

Set other copy modes as required.



#### Manual copy density mode

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press either the (1) or (1) button to adjust the copy density to the desired level.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	R	FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100% AP		NON-SORT NON-STAPLE
A3 B5					PROOF COPY

- The copied image becomes lighter as you press the I button and darker as you press the I button.
- Set other copy modes as required.
- **4** Press the [START] button.

# 4

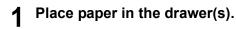
# **IMAGE ADJUSTMENT**

This chapter describes the image adjustment functions allowing you to change the overall colour balance of the copied image, copy an original in a specified colour, and so on.

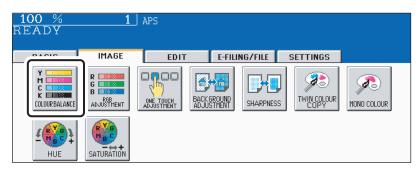
Colour Balance (YMCK Adjustment)	140
RGB Adjustment	142
One-Touch Adjustment	143
Background Adjustment	144
Sharpness	145
Twin Colour (2-Colour) Copy TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE RED & BLACK	
Monocolour copying	
Hue	153
Saturation	154

#### Colour Balance (YMCK Adjustment)

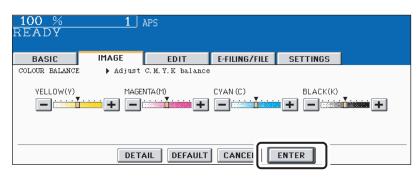
This function allows you to adjust an overall colour balance of the copied image by changing each toner amount of yellow (Y), magenta (M), cyan (C) and black (K). This function is available only in the full colour mode and the auto colour mode.



- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [COLOUR BALANCE] button.



### **4** Press the + or - button of the colour to obtain the desired colour balance. Then press the [ENTER] button.



- The centre of each colour bar denotes its default setting.
- Select other copy modes as required.

#### Tip

Each colour balance on every density area can be adjusted by your pressing the [DETAIL] button.

For example, when you adjust the high density area of magenta (M) to  $\oplus$  side, magenta in its high density area becomes darker. When you adjust the low density area of magenta (M) to  $\bigcirc$  side, magenta in its low density area becomes lighter.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
COLOUR BALANC	S 🕨 🕨 Adjust	C.M.Y.K balance			
YELLO		MAGENTA(M)	CYAN(C)	BLAC	
	+		+ -		······································
HIGH DENSITY 💻	+			+	
		DEFAULT		ENTER	

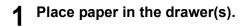
#### **5** Press the [START] button.

#### Cancelling the colour balance adjustment

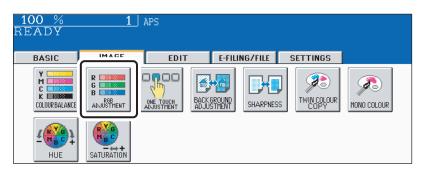
Move the indicator of the colour whose adjustment you want to cancel its adjustment to  $\checkmark$  by your pressing the  $\oplus$  or  $\bigcirc$  button, and then press the [ENTER] button. If you want to cancel the adjustment of all colours, press the [DEFAULT] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

#### **RGB** Adjustment

This function allows you to adjust an overall colour balance of the copied image by changing the strength of red (R), green (G) and blue (B) at the time of scanning. This function is available only in the full colour mode and the auto colour mode.



- Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [RGB ADJUSTMENT] button.



**4** Press the *±* or *□* button of the colour to obtain the desired colour balance. Then press the [ENTER] button.

100 % READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
RGB ADJUSTMENT	🔹 🕨 Adjust R	. G. B balance			
۹ ]	RED (R)	GREEN (G)	BLU	ie (B)	•
		DEFAULT		ENTER	

- "
  "
  " at the centre of each colour bar denotes its default setting.
- Select other copy modes as required.

#### **5** Press the [START] button.

#### Cancelling RGB adjustment

Move the indicator of the colour whose adjustment you want to cancel its adjustment to  $\checkmark$  by your pressing the  $\oplus$  or  $\bigcirc$  button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

If you want to cancel the adjustment of all colours, press the [DEFAULT] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

# **One-Touch Adjustment**

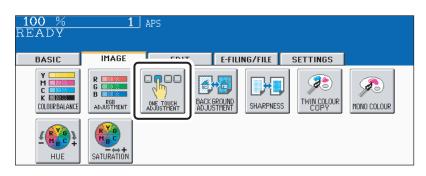
This function allows you to obtain the desired image quality. You can select among 5 modes; "WARM", "COOL", "VIVID", "CLEAR" or "MARKER" in a one-touch operation. When you select [MARKER], the multiple colours drawn with a highlight pen on the original can be copied so as to be distinguished clearly.

Note

The colour shade may not be the same as that of the original depending on the colour of the highlight pen.

This function is available only in the full colour mode. See Colour Guide for the adjustment results.

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [ONE TOUCH ADJUSTMENT] button.



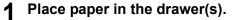
Press the [WARM], [COOL], [VIVID], [CLEAR] or [MARKER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 i	APS				
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS		
BASIC     INAGE     EDIT     E-FILING/FILE     SETTINGS       ONE TOUCH ADJUSTMENT     > Select mode       WARM     COOL     VIVID     CLEAR     MARKER						
CANCEL						

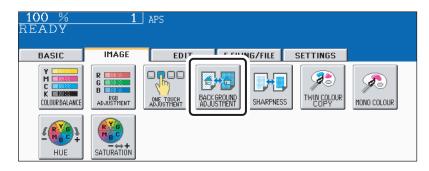
Select other copy modes as required.

# **Background Adjustment**

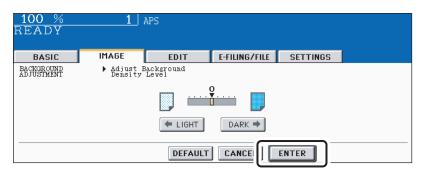
This function allows you to adjust the density of the original's background. It avoids the back side of 2-sided originals becoming visible on the front side of the original through the copy. This mode can be used regardless of the colour mode setting.



- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [BACKGROUND ADJUSTMENT] button.



**4** Press the [LIGHT] (or [DARK]) button to adjust the density, and then press the [ENTER] button.



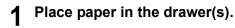
Select other copy modes as required.

# **5** Press the [START] button.

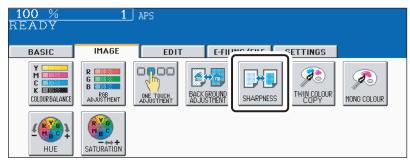
#### Cancelling the background adjustment

- Press the [DEFAULT] button and then the [ENTER] button.
- Adjust the background level to "0", and then press the [ENTER] button.

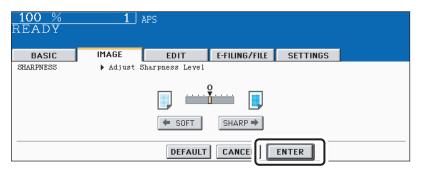
This function allows you to emphasize or blur the outline of the image. When the sharpness level is adjusted to the [SOFT] side, the moire fringes are suppressed. If it is adjusted to the [SHARP] side, the letters and fine lines become sharper.



- Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [SHARPNESS] button.



**4** Press the [SOFT] (or [SHARP]) button to adjust the sharpness, and then press the [ENTER] button.



- When the sharpness level is adjusted to the [SOFT] side, the moire fringes are suppressed. If it is adjusted to the [SHARP] side, the letters and fine lines become sharper.
- Select other copy modes as required.

# **5** Press the [START] button.

#### Cancelling the background adjustment

- Press the [DEFAULT] button and then the [ENTER] button.
- Adjust the background level to "0", and then press the [ENTER] button.

# Twin Colour (2-Colour) Copy

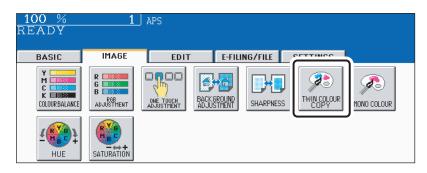
This function allows you to copy a coloured original in 2 specified colours. There are 2 types of twin colour copy as follows:

**TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE:** The black part and the parts other than black in the original are copied separately in 2 colours which have been manually specified.

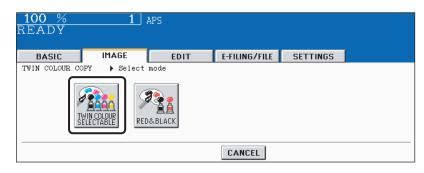
**RED & BLACK:** The red part in the original is copied in red and the parts other than red are copied in black and white.

# TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE

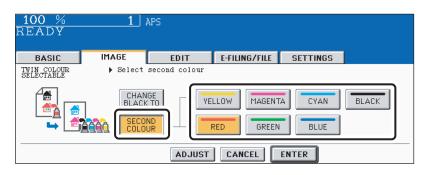
- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [TWIN COLOUR COPY] button.



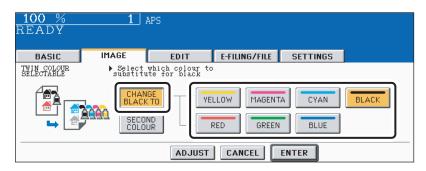
**4** Press the [TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE] button.



**5** Select a colour for the parts other than black in the original. Press the [SECOND COLOUR] button, and then select the desired colour.



6 Select a colour for the black part in the original. Press the [CHANGE BLACK TO] button, and then select the desired colour.



# **7** Press the [ADJUST] button to adjust the colour balance as required.

100 % READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE	▶ Please s	pecify colour b	alance adjustme	nt each in origi:	nal.
	YELLOW(Y)	MAGENTA (M)	CY4	N (C)	
		+ -		) · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	1
					,
	DETA	AIL DEFAULT	CANCEI	ENTER	

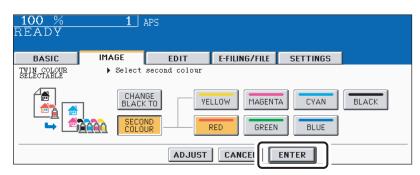
#### Tips

- Each the colour balance of yellow and magenta on every density area can be adjusted by your pressing the [DETAIL] button.
   For example, when you adjust the high density area of magenta (M) to 
   is side, magenta in its high density area becomes darker. When you adjust the low density area of magenta (M) to 
   is side, magenta in its low density area becomes lighter.
- When neither of two colours are black, or when the both of two colours are black, this adjustment is disabled.
- When two colours specified are the combination of black and a colour other than black, colour balance adjustment is enabled only on the colour other than black.

In case the black part of the original is copied in cyan and other parts are copied in black, for example, only the colour balance of cyan part can be adjusted.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
TWIN COLOUR SELECTABLE	▶ Please s YELLOW(Y)	pecify colour b MAGENTA(M		nt each in orig AN(C)	inal.
LOW DENSITY					F
MID. DENSITY			·····		F
HIGH DENSITY		+ -			•
		DEFAULT		ENTER	

# 8 Press the [ENTER] button.



Select other copy modes as required.



### Press the [START] button.

### Cancelling colour balance adjustment

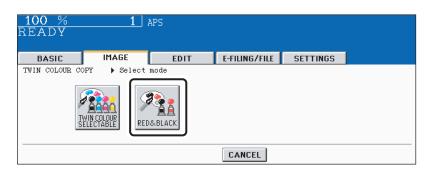
- Set the colour balance of the colour you want to cancel its adjustment to ▼, and then press the [ENTER] button.
- If you want to cancel the adjustment of all colours, press the [DEFAULT] button, and then
  press the [ENTER] button.

### **RED & BLACK**

- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [TWIN COLOUR COPY] button.

<u>100</u> % READY		1 APS				
BASIC	IMAGE	ED	IT E-FI	ILING/FILE	CETTINCE	
M C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C				SHARPNESS	TWIN COLOUR COPY	MONO COLOUR
		F N				,

**4** Press the [RED & BLACK] button.



**5** To adjust the red colour, press the [ADJUST] button. If you do not change the colour balance, press the [ENTER] button and proceed to step 7.

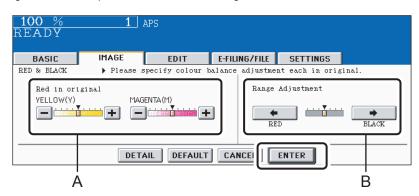
<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS				
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS		
BASIC     IMAGE     EDIT     E-FILING/FILE     SETTINGS       RED & BLACK     Red in original is copied red other colour in original is copied black     Image: Colour in original is copied black						
		ADJUST		ENTER		

# 6 Adjust the colour balance or the red-and-black area adjustment as required. Press the [ENTER] button after adjustment.

Red colour balance adjustment

Press the  $\oplus$  or  $\bigcirc$  button of the desired colour to adjust the red colour balance. Red colour balance adjustment

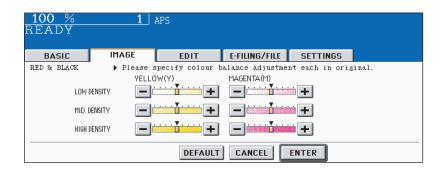
Press the end or button to adjust the area to be copied in red or black. When you set the red area larger, the area copied in red becomes larger. When you set the black area larger, the area copied in black becomes larger.



#### Tip

Each the colour balance of yellow and magenta on every density area can be adjusted by your pressing the [DETAIL] button.

For example, when you adjust the high density area of magenta (M) to  $\pm$  side, magenta in its high density area becomes darker. When you adjust the low density area of magenta (M) to - side, magenta in its low density area becomes lighter.



# 7 Select other copy modes as required, and then press the [START] button.

#### Cancelling colour balance adjustment

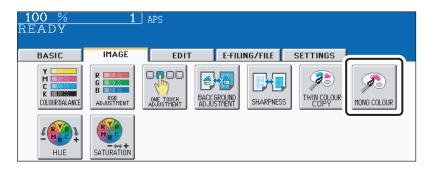
- Set the colour balance of the colour you want to cancel its adjustment to ▼, and then press the [ENTER] button.
- If you want to cancel the adjustment of all colours, press the [DEFAULT] button, and then
  press the [ENTER] button.

## Monocolour copying

You can copy in a single colour except black.

Monocolour copying is selectable among the following 10 colours: Magenta, yellow, yellow green, cyan, pink, red, orange, green, blue, purple

- Place paper in the drawer.
- **2** Place an original.
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [MONO COLOUR] button.



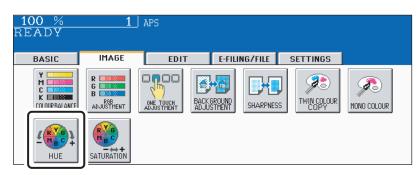
▲ Press the button corresponding to the desired colour.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
MONO COLOUR	▶ Select o	one monocolour			
	MAGENTA	YELLOW	W GREEN CYAN	PINK	
	RED	ORANGE GR	EEN BLUE	PURPLE	
			CANCEL		

Select other copy modes as required.

Hue on the basic colour can be adjusted. This function is available only in the full colour mode and the auto colour mode.

- **1** Place paper in the drawer.
- 2 Place an original.
- **3** Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [HUE] button.



4 Adjust the hue of the entire image with the + or − button of the section A. With the + or − button of the section B, you can adjust the hue of each basic colour.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	] APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	+	1AGENTA(M)	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	RED (R)	
		DEFAULT	CANCEL	ENTER	
A					B

# **5** Press the [ENTER] button.

Select other copy modes as required.

# 6 Press the [START] button.

### Cancelling hue adjustment

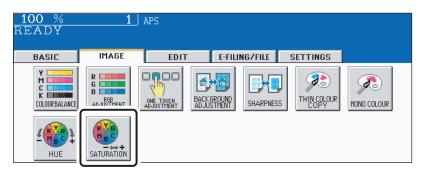
- Set the hue of the colour you want to cancel its adjustment to ▼, and then press the [ENTER] button.
- If you want to cancel the adjustment of all colours, press the [DEFAULT] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

# Saturation

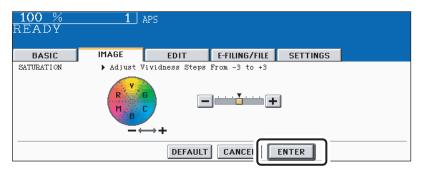
Colour saturation of the entire image can be adjusted. This function is available only in the full colour mode and the auto colour mode.

- **1** Place paper in the drawer.
- **2** Place an original.
- 3

Press the [IMAGE] button to enter the image menu, and then press the [SATURATION] button.



4 Adjust saturation with the + or − button. Press the [ENTER] button after adjustment.



Select other copy modes as required.

**5** Press the [START] button.

#### **Cancelling saturation adjustment**

- Set the saturation of the colour you want to cancel its adjustment to ▼ and then press the [ENTER] button.
- Press the [DEFAULT] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

# 5

# **USING THE EDITING FUNCTIONS**

This chapter describes various editing functions including IMAGE SHIFT, 2IN1 / 4IN1, JOB BUILD and so on, which result in neatly finished copy jobs.

IMAGE SHIFT	
Creating a right or left margin	
Creating a top or bottom margin	
Creating a bookbinding margin	
EDGE ERASE	163
BOOK CENTRE ERASE	164
DUAL PAGE	166
2IN1 / 4IN1	168
MAGAZINE SORT	171
EDITING	173
Trimming / Masking	
Mirror image	
Negative/Positive reversal	
XY ZOOM	178
COVER SHEET	
SHEET INSERTION	
TIME STAMP	
PAGE NUMBER	
JOB BUILD	
IMAGE DIRECTION	193
BOOK - TABLET	
ADF / SADF	196

FULL IMAGE	
Single feed mode	
Continuous feed mode	106

# **IMAGE SHIFT**

A margin for binding can be created. The following types are available.

- 1. Created by shifting the original image to either the right or left side (Right or Left margin)
- 2. Created by shifting the original image to either the upper or lower side (Top or Bottom margin)

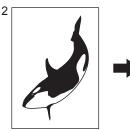
### Tips

1

• The 'Top or Bottom margin' can be used in combination with the 'Right or Left margin' or the 'Bookbinding margin'.









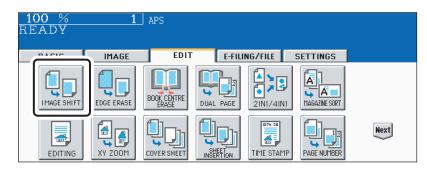
• The margin width can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.

# Creating a right or left margin

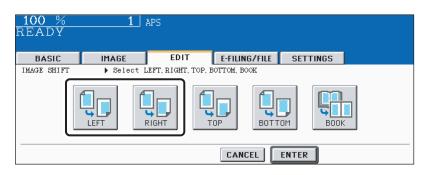
### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.

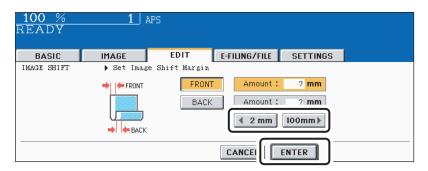
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.



### ▲ Press the [LEFT] (or [RIGHT]) button.

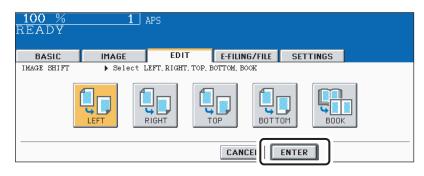


5 Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [100 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.



- The default width of the margin is 7 mm.
- In duplex copying, margins on the back are created on the other side of those in the front. (P.125 "Duplex Copying")

### 6 Press the [ENTER] button.



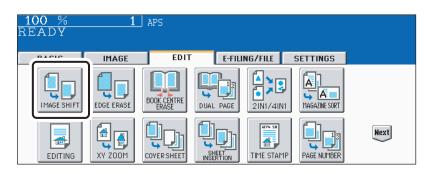
Select other copy modes as required.

### Creating a top or bottom margin

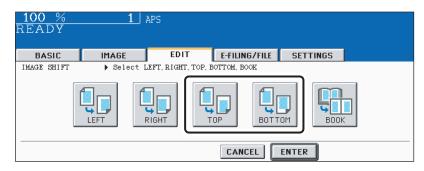
Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.

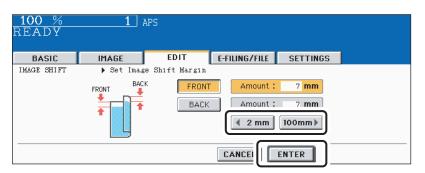
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.



**4** Press the [TOP] (or [BOTTOM]) button.

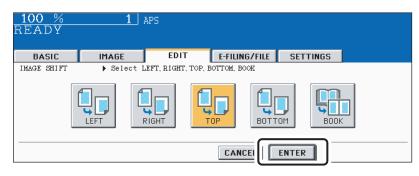


**5** Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [100 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.



- The default width of the margin is 7 mm.
- In duplex copying, margins on the back are created on the other side of those in the front. (P.125 "Duplex Copying")

# 6 Press the [ENTER] button.



Select other copy modes as required.

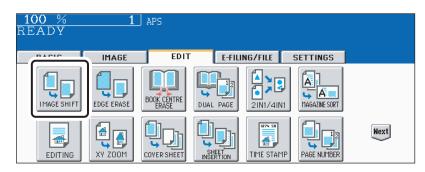
### Creating a bookbinding margin

This is used when setting "Book-type original -> 2-sided copy" ( $\square$  P.130) in duplex copying. The margin is created in the centre (inner margin).

### Tips

- Acceptable paper sizes for this function is A4 and B5 only.
- The width of the white border can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.

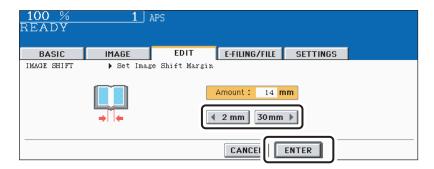
**1** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE SHIFT] button.



# 2 Press the [BOOK] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS		
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS
IMAGE SHIFT		LEFT, RIGHT, TOP, B	OTTOM, BOOK	
			CANCEL	ENTER

**3** Adjust the margin width by pressing the [2 mm] or [30 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.



The default width of the margin is 14 mm.

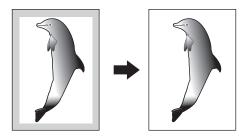
# **4** Press the [ENTER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
IMAGE SHIFT	▶ Select I	EFT, RIGHT, TOP, B	OTTOM, BOOK		

Set "Book-type original -> 2-sided copy" ( P.130) in duplex copying as well.

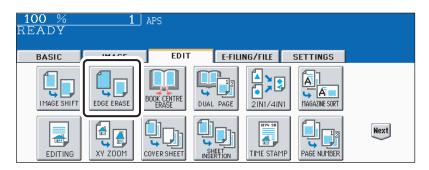
If the original has a dirty or torn edge, it may be reproduced as a black stain on the copy. In that case, set the edge erase. A white border is created along the edges of the copy, eliminating those black stains.

This function is available only in the case of standard-size originals.

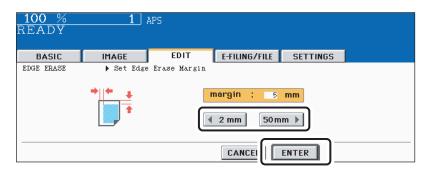


### **1 Place paper in the drawer(s).** When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.

- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDGE ERASE] button.



**4** Adjust the width by pressing the [2 mm] or [50 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

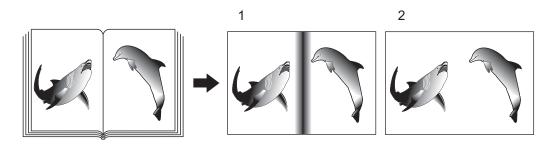


- The default width of the white border is 5 mm.
- Select other copy modes as required.

# **BOOK CENTRE ERASE**

This function allows you to erase the shadow in the centre of a book original.

- 1. Before book centre erase is set
- 2. After book centre erase is set



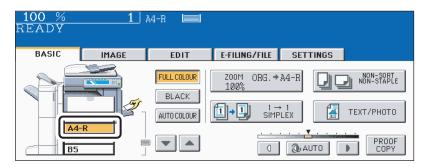
Tip

The width of the book center erase margin can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.

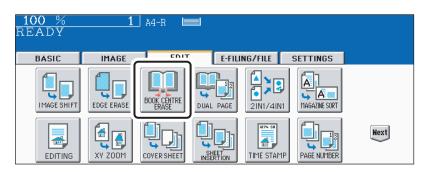
**1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.

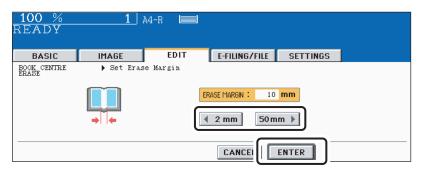
**2** Press the drawer button representing the desired paper size on the touch panel.



**3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [BOOK CENTRE ERASE] button.



**4** Adjust the width by pressing the [2 mm] or [50 mm] button, and then press the [ENTER] button.

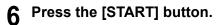


- The default width of the erase margin is 10 mm.
- Select other copy modes as required.

**5** Place a book original on the original glass. Align its centre with the yellow guide line near the centre of the original glass.

### Caution

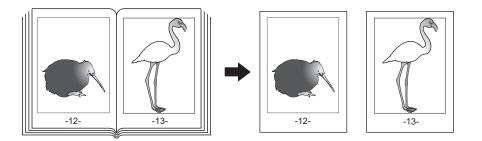
Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.



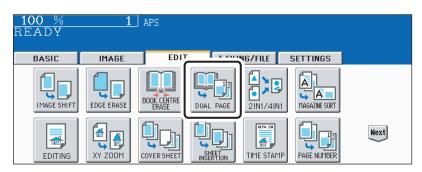
# DUAL PAGE

This function allows the facing pages of a book or magazine to be copied page by page onto 2 separate sheets of paper or duplex-copied on one sheet. It is not necessary to move the original on the glass. You can also place a pair of A4 sized originals side by side and copy them on separate sheets of paper.

• Acceptable paper sizes for this function is A4 only.



- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then the [DUAL PAGE] button.



### **3** Press the [1 SIDE] (or [2 SIDE]) button.

**1 SIDE:** Making copies of the facing pages on 2 separate sheets of paper page by page **2 SIDE:** Making duplex copies of them on one sheet

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS				
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS		
DASIC     INAGE     LDII     ETHING7FIE     SELECT A4/LT COPY size and select 1 Side of 2 Side, then place originals on the glass       1 SIDE     2 SIDE						
CANCEL						

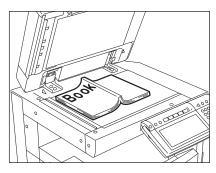
- The yellow indicator line for placing a book moves near the centre of the original glass.
- If you need a binding margin, set the right or left margin. (
   P.157 "Creating a right or left margin")

# **4** Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select the copy size (A4 or B5).

- When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.
- Select other copy modes as required.

# 5 Place the first page(s) to be copied on the glass, and then press the [START] button.

Centre the book on the yellow indicator line with the bottom toward you. (



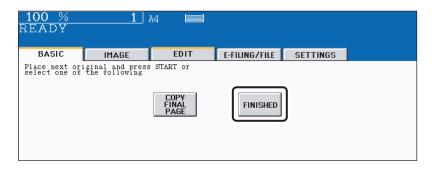
#### Caution

Do not place heavy objects (4 kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

# **6** Turn to the next page, set the book again, and then press the [START] button.

Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

7 After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FIN-ISHED] button.

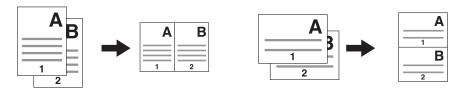


Press the [COPY FINAL PAGE] button if the last original is a 1-sided page.

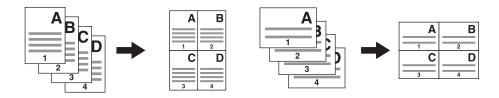
# 2IN1 / 4IN1

This feature allows multiple originals to be reduced and copied onto a single sheet of paper. There are 2 modes: 2IN1 copying, where 2 originals are copied onto a single sheet, and 4IN1 copying, where 4 originals are copied onto a single sheet. In addition, duplex 2IN1 / 4IN1 modes are available, where four/eight originals can be copied to 2 sides of a single sheet of paper.

2IN1

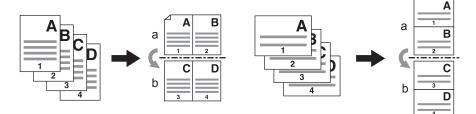


4IN1



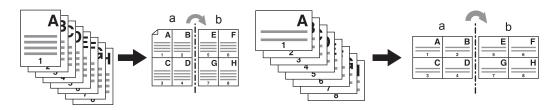
2IN1 DUPLEX (a: Side 1, b: Side 2)

 When a copy is turned with the line as a pivot, originals are printed on Side 2 (back face) as shown.



4IN1 DUPLEX (a: Side 1, b: Side 2)

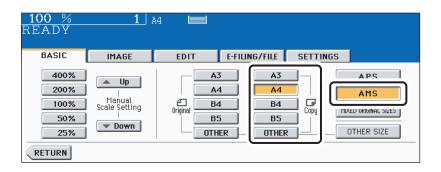
 When a copy is turned with the line as a pivot, originals are printed on Side 2 (back face) as shown.



**1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

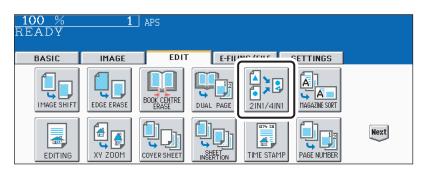
#### Tips

- When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.
- If the paper size is not changed, paper of the same size as the original is selected.
- To make copies on paper which is not the same size as the original, press the [ZOOM] button on the basic menu to enter the following menu, select the desired paper size and press the [AMS] button.

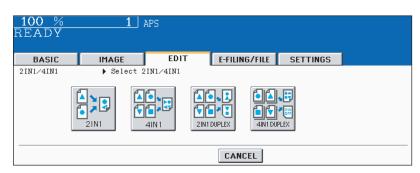


# **2** Place the original(s).

**3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [2IN1 / 4IN1] button.



# **4** Select the type of image combination.



# **5** Press the [1 SIDE] (or [2 SIDE]) button.

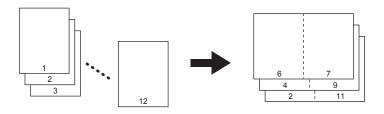
<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
2IN1/4IN1	▶ Select 1 SIDE or 2 SIDE				
1 SIDE 2 SIDE					
CANCEL					

Select other copy modes as required.



This function allows 1-sided originals to be copied and sorted so that they can be folded and bound along a centre line like typical magazines or booklets.

#### Example of copying a 12-page document

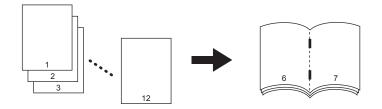


Tip

When placing a portrait originals horizontal to you in the magazine sort mode, be sure to set the correct direction of the originals. ( P.193 "IMAGE DIRECTION")

Using this function in combination with the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) makes copies automatically folded in half and stapled along their centre line.

#### Example of copying with the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional)



The Magazine sort function has 2 procedures; operating from the basic menu and operating from the edit menu. When operating from the edit menu, the margin width can be adjusted. To operate from the basic menu, see P.118 "Magazine sort & saddle stitch mode (booklet mode)".

### Place paper in the drawer(s).

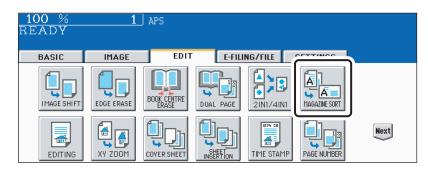
When using the Saddle Stitch Finisher, A3, A4-R, B4, LD, LG and LT-R are available.

### **2** Select the paper type.

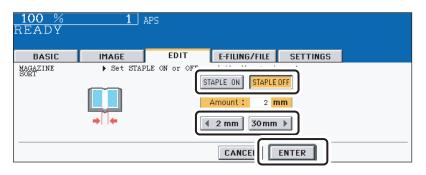
- For drawer feeding, see 🛄 P.100 "Manual paper selection".
- For bypass feeding, see 📖 P.85 "Bypass Copying".

### **3** Place the original(s).

# **4** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [MAGAZINE SORT] button.



**5** Set the saddle-stitch and the binding margin and press the [ENTER] button.



#### Tips

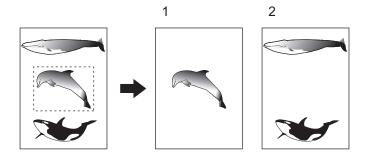
- To staple the centre line using the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional), press the [STA-PLE ON] button. For the maximum number of sheets that can be stapled, see P.120 "Available conditions for saddle stitching".
- To adjust the width, press the [2 mm] or [30 mm] button.
- The default width of the margin is 2 mm.
- The margin width can be adjusted in 1 mm increments.
- Select other copy modes as required.

### **Trimming / Masking**

This function allows you to copy only the inside of the specified area on an original (trimming) or copy with the specified area masked (masking). Up to 4 rectangular areas can be specified on an original.

### Tips

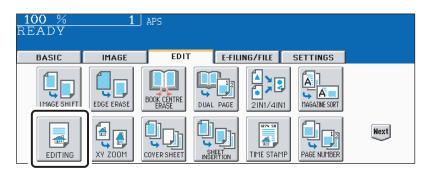
- Image editing is only available with standard-size originals.
- If the original and copy paper sizes are set incorrectly, the image in the specified range may not be copied correctly.
  - 1. An example of trimming
  - 2. An example of masking



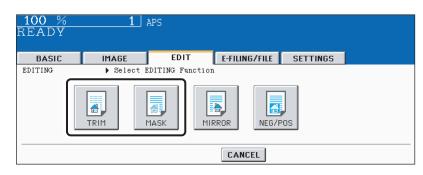
### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size (  $\square$  P.98 "Paper Selection").

# **2** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.

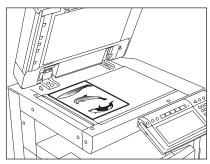


# **3** Press the [TRIM] (or [MASK]) button.



# 4 Place the original with its face up on the original glass.

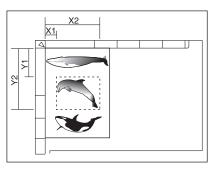
Set the original face up with its bottom toward you and fit its top left corner against the top left corner of the original glass, and align it with the original scales.



#### Caution

Do not place heavy objects (4kg or more) on the original glass and do not press on it with force. Breaking the glass could injure you.

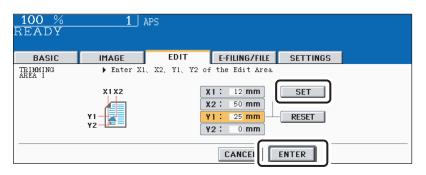
5 Specify the area. Using the original scale on the left and the inner (top) scale, read the following 4 values:



The marks of the original scale have a 2 mm pitch.

- $\ensuremath{\textbf{X1:}}$  Distance from the top left to the left edge of the specified area
- **X2:** Distance from the top left to the right edge of the specified area
- Y1: Distance from the top left to the upper edge of the specified area
- $\textbf{Y2:} \ \text{Distance from the top left to the lower edge of the specified area}$

# 6 Enter the values read in step 5 for the specified area, and then press the [SET] button. Set 4 values in order.

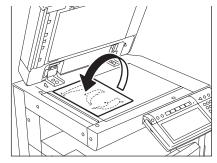


- After the setting of 4 values is finished, the next edit area menu is displayed. Repeat steps 5 and 6 when you specify other areas. Up to 4 areas can be specified on an original.
- To correct the value which has been set, press the [RESET] button. Pressing it once makes the highlighted field move one position upward. Highlight the field in which you want to rectify the value, and then key in the correct one.

### **7** Press the [ENTER] button after specifying the area.

# 8 Place the original(s) with its face down.

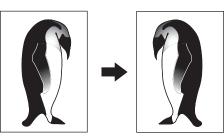
- Set the original face down with its bottom toward you and fit its top left corner against the top left corner of the original glass.
- Select other copy modes as required.





### **Mirror image**

This function allows you to make copies with images completely reversed (right and left).

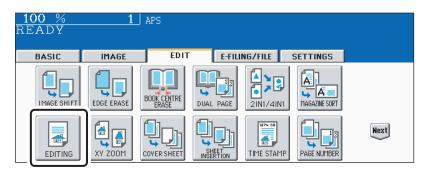


### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

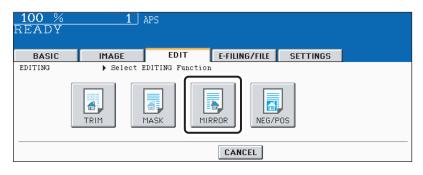
When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size (  $\square$  P.98 "Paper Selection").

**2** Place the original(s).

# **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.



# **4** Press the [MIRROR] button.

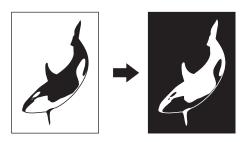


Select other copy modes as required.

### **Negative/Positive reversal**

This function allows you to make copies reversing the contrasting density on the whole face of original.

This function can be used only when the colour mode is "BLACK" or "FULL COLOUR".

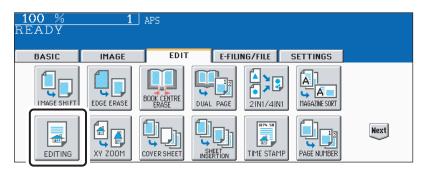


### Place paper in the drawer(s).

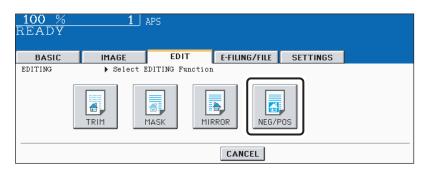
When using this mode in bypass copying, be sure to specify the paper size ( P.98 "Paper Selection").

**2** Place the original(s).

# **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [EDITING] button.



### ▲ Press the [NEG/POS] button.



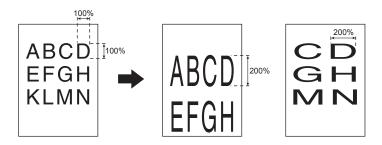
- This button cannot be selected when the colour mode is "AUTO COLOUR".
- Select other copy modes as required.

# XY ZOOM

This function allows you to make copies with different reproduction ratios set for the X (horizontal) and Y (vertical) direction.

The reproduction ratio is in the range of 25 to 400%. However, in the following cases, it is in the range of 25 to 200%.

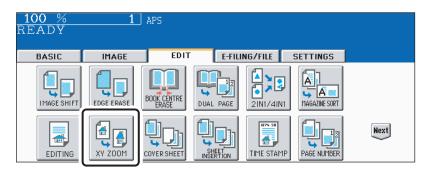
- When the colour mode is "FULL COLOUR" or "AUTO COLOUR"
- When the colour mode is "BLACK" and the original mode is "PHOTO".
- · When the original mode is "IMAGE SMOOTHING"
- When "TWIN COLOUR COPY" is used
- When "MONO COLOUR COPY" is used.
- When the original is set on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)



### **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).

When using this mode in bypass copying ( P.85), be sure to specify the paper size.

- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [XY ZOOM] button.



**4** Using the [25%] and [400%] buttons, set the reproduction ratio for X and press the [SET] button. Then set the reproduction ratio for Y.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS				
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-F	ILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
XY ZOOM	> Set XY 2	ZOOM ratio	<b>X:</b> 80	%	SET	
	×**		25% < C	100 %	>400%	

## **5** Press the [ENTER] button.

<b>100</b> % READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
XY ZOOM	▶ Set XY 2	SOOM ratio			
	Y		:: 80 %	SET	
	x	2	5% < 100 %	>400%	
				ENTER	

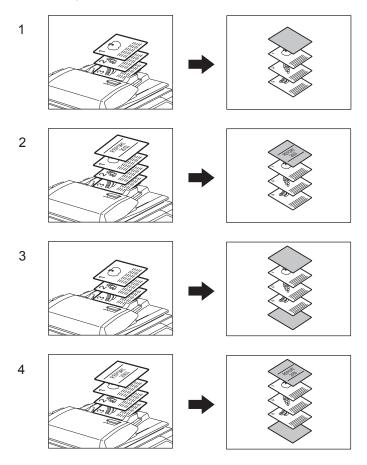
Select other copy modes as required.



### COVER SHEET

This function allows you to insert special sheets of paper (such as colour paper) into a set of copies as cover sheets. A copied front cover sheet can be inserted. The back cover sheet is inserted blank. There are 4 types of sheet insertion modes:

- 1. Adding a blank front cover sheet ([TOP BLANK])
- 2. Adding a copied front cover sheet ([TOP COPIED])
- 3. Adding a blank front and blank back cover sheets ([BOTH BLANK])
- 4. Adding a copied front and blank back cover sheets ([TOP COPIED BACK BLANK])



### **1** Place the cover sheet.

### Notes

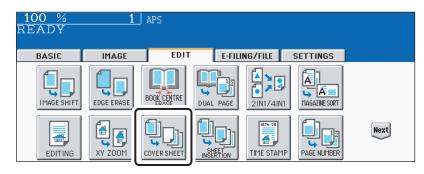
- Place the cover sheet in the drawer selected for cover sheets or on the bypass tray.
- When it is placed in the drawer for the cover sheets, you must set the paper type (cover sheet), size and thickness. (
   P.62 "Drawer for special uses")
- When it is placed on the bypass tray, you must set the paper size and thickness. ( P.85 "Bypass Copying")
- Make sure the cover sheet and the sheets other than the cover sheet are placed in the same direction and of the same size.

### **2** Place paper (other than cover paper) in the drawer(s).

## **3** Place the original(s).

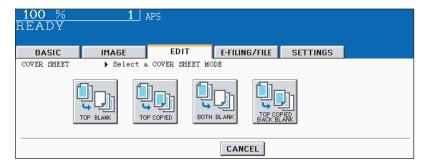
Originals should be placed from the first page on the original glass.

# **4** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu and then the [COVER SHEET] button.



### **5** Press the desired cover sheet button.

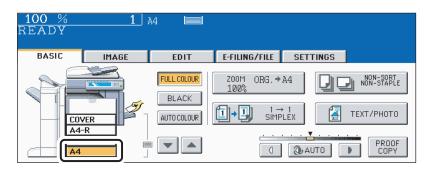
TOP BLANK: To add a blank front cover sheet TOP COPIED: To add a copied front cover sheet BOTH BLANK: To add blank front and back cover sheets TOP COPIED BACK BLANK: To add copied front and blank back cover sheets



### Tip

When "1-Sided Original to 2-Sided Copy" with the [TOP COPIED] or [TOP COPIED BACK BLANK] button pressed is performed, a 1-sided copy is made for a cover sheet.

6 Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select a paper source of the same size and direction as the cover sheet.



Select other copy modes as required.

### 7 Press the [START] button.

- When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) is used, the original is scanned and copying starts.
- When the original is placed on the original glass, perform steps 8 and 9.
- **8** Press the [YES] button and place the next original. Then press the [START] button.

Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

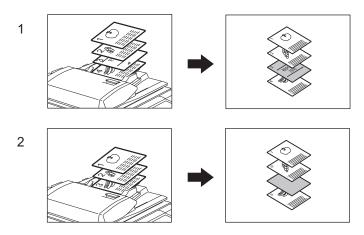
**9** After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FIN-ISHED] button.

Copying starts.

## SHEET INSERTION

This function allows you to insert special sheets of paper (such as colour paper) into the specified pages. 2 kinds of sheets for insertion are available. Up to 50 pages can be specified for [INSERT SOURCE 1] and [INSERT SOURCE 2], respectively. There are 2 types of sheet insertion modes:

- 1. Inserting a copied sheet into the specified page ([COPIED])
- 2. Inserting a blank sheet into the page previous to the specified one ([BLANK])



Place the special sheets of paper.

### Tips

- Place the special sheets of paper on the bypass tray or in the drawer selected for sheet insertion.
- Both special sheets of paper and plain paper should be placed in the same direction and be of the same size.

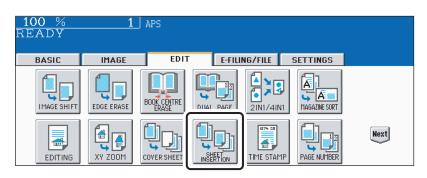
P.62 "Drawer for special uses"

### Place plain paper in the drawer(s).

### **3** Place the original(s).

Originals should be placed from the first page on the original glass.

# **4** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [SHEET INSERTION] button.



## **5** Press the [COPIED] (or [BLANK]) button.

**COPIED:** To insert a copied sheet into the specified page **BLANK:** To insert a blank sheet into the page previous to the specified one

<u>100 %</u> READY		L APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
SHEET INSERTION					
			CANCEL		

## 6 Press the [INSERT SOURCE 1] (or [INSERT SOURCE 2]) button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
SHEET INSERTION	IMAGE     EDIT     E-FILING/FILE     SETTINGS       > Enter the insertion page number     SHEET: 1     Insert page : 0       INSERT     Insert page : 0     SET				
			CANCEL	ENTER	

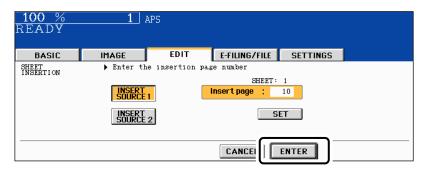
7 Key in the desired page number (3 digits or less) for insertion and press the [SET] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
SHEET INSERTION	▶ Enter th	ne insertion pag	e number		
	INSERT SOURCE	1	nsert page :	10	
	INSERT SOURCE	2	S	ET	
			CANCEL	ENTER	

### Tips

- When [COPIED] is selected on step 5, a copied sheet is inserted into the specified page. When [BLANK] is selected, a blank sheet is inserted into the page previous to the specified one.
- Up to 50 pages can be specified for [INSERT SOURCE 1] and [INSERT SOURCE 2].
   When inserting multiple sheets one by one at specified pages, repeat steps 6 and 7.

8 After the specifying of all insertion pages is finished, press the [ENTER] button.



**9** Press the [BASIC] button to enter the basic menu, and then select a paper source of the same size and direction as the sheet insertion.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
		FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	Z00M ORG.→ 100%		NON-SOBT NON-STAPLE
				AUTO	PROOF COPY

Select other copy modes as required.

### **10** Press the [START] button.

- When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) is used, the original is scanned and copying starts.
- When the original is placed on the original glass, perform steps 11 and 12.
- **11** Press the [YES] button and place the next original. Then press the [START] button.

Repeat this step until all the originals have finished being scanned.

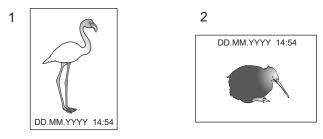
# **12** After all the originals have finished being scanned, press the [FIN-ISHED] button.

Copying starts.

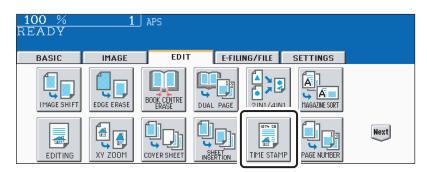
## TIME STAMP

This function allows you to add the time and date of the scanning to the copies.

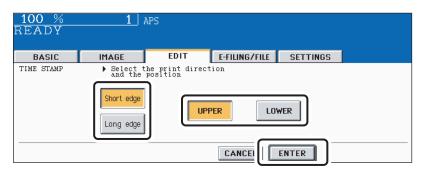
- 1. Printed at the bottom of a portrait copy
- 2. Printed at the top of a landscape copy



- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [TIME STAMP] button.



4 Select the orientation ([Short edge] or [Long edge]) and position ([UPPER] or [LOWER]) of the date and time to be printed, and then press the [ENTER] button.



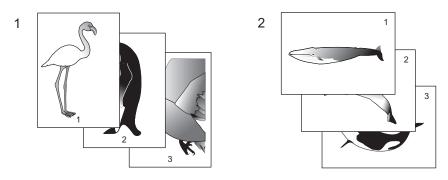
Select other copy modes as required.

**5** Press the [START] button.

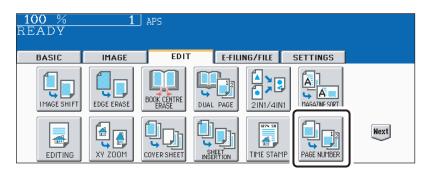
## PAGE NUMBER

This function allows you to add page numbers to the copies.

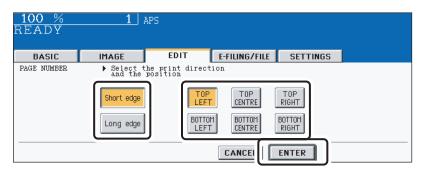
- 1. Printed at the bottom centre of a portrait copy
- 2. Printed at the top right of a landscape copy



- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [PAGE NUMBER] button.



4 Select the orientation ([Short edge] or [Long edge]) and position ([TOP LEFT], [TOP CENTRE], [TOP RIGHT], [BOTTOM LEFT], [BOTTOM CENTRE] or [BOTTOM RIGHT]) of the page number to be printed, and then press the [ENTER] button.



5 Key in the starting page number and then press the [ENTER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
PAGE NUMBER	IMAGE     EDIT     E-HILMG/FILE     SEITINGS <ul> <li>Enter the Initial Page Number of the Originals</li> <li>Initial Page : 1</li> <li>CLEAR</li> </ul>				
				ENTER	

Select other copy modes as required.

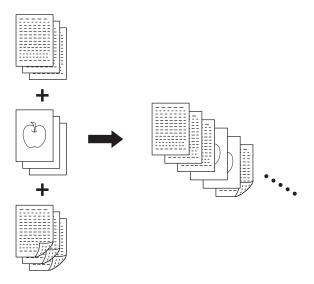
## 6 Press the [START] button.

## JOB BUILD

This function allows you to copy different kinds of originals at one time.

Scanning is performed by setting the optimal original mode and image adjustment for each original (it is called a job). After all the originals have finished being scanned, they can be copied at one time.

Also, the original scanning source (Reversing Automatic Document Feeder or original glass) of originals can be switched per job, and so, for example, after originals such as multiple A3 texts, news clips, photographs in magazines and multiple A4 photographs with the appropriate settings have finished being scanned, they can be copied in the scanned order in one go. And the scanned data can be stored in e-Filing.



- Up to 1000 pages of originals are possible.
- Any number of jobs can be set until the total number of scanned original pages reaches 1000.

There are restrictions on the settings for JOB BUILD: Settings not available for JOB BUILD, common settings which are set before scanning the first job and applied to all jobs, and changeable settings for each job. See the following table to perform the setting.

Settings not available for JOB BUILD	Common settings for all jobs	Changeable settings per each job
Automatic Paper Selection (APS) Book to 2 Twin colour copy Image editing XY zoom Cover copying Sheet insertion mode Magazine sort Magazine sort & Saddle stitch 2IN1 / 4IN1 Full image	e-Filing/file Mixed-size original Paper size to be copied Sort mode Image shift Book centre erase Time stamp Page number Image direction in 2-sided copying Book <-> tablet	Reproduction ratio Automatic magnification selection (Default setting for JOB BUILD) Original size Original mode Colour mode 1-sided -> 1-sided / 2-sided -> 1-sided (or 1-sided -> 2-sided / 2-sided -> 2-sided / 2-sided -> 2-sided) copying Background adjustment Sharpness Edge erase
		Dual-page ADF / SADF

### **1** Place the originals of the 1st job.

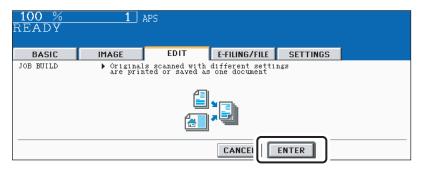
#### Tips

- When an original is placed on the original glass, one page is regarded as one job.
- To copy mixed-size originals using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, see
   P.101 "Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original size)".
- Select the drawer if you want to specify it.
- **2** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [JOB BUILD] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BACIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	IMAGE DIRECTION	BOOK↔TABLET		Æ	Prev

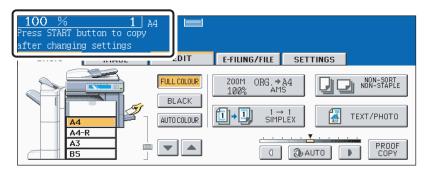
If the desired function button is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

### **3** Press the [ENTER] button.



Read the brief description of JOB BUILD on the touch panel. JOB BUILD is set and the basic menu is displayed.

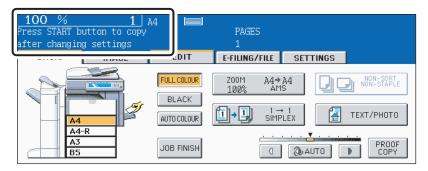
**4** After "Press START button to copy after changing settings." appears, perform the settings for the 1st job and the common settings for all jobs.



- Press the [SETTINGS] button to confirm the settings.
- To change the settings, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button, and then start the procedure again from step 1.
- **5** Press the [START] button.

The scanning of the originals for the 1st job starts.

6 After "Press START button to copy after changing settings." appears, place the originals of the 2nd job. Perform the settings for the 2nd job.



Note that copying will be performed in the same modes as those of the 1st job if the settings are not changed.

• Press the [SETTINGS] button to confirm the settings.

### **7** Press the [START] button.

The scanning of the originals for the 2nd job starts.

• Repeat steps 6 to 7 until all the originals have finished being scanned.

**8** After all the originals have finished being scanned, confirm the number of copies on the menu and change if needed.

**9** Press the [JOB FINISH] button on the basic menu.



The copying of the originals starts.

• When copy and e-Filing/file functions are set, storing starts.

## **IMAGE DIRECTION**

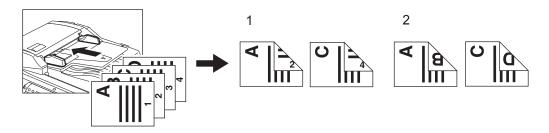
This function allows you to adjust the direction to 'open to left' when a lengthwise A3, B4 original, etc. is copied under the mode of 1-Sided Originals to 2-Sided Copies (or 2-Sided Originals to 1-Sided Copies).

This function is not necessary for copying in the direction of 'open to top'.

When a 2-sided 'open to left' (Book) portrait A3, B4 original, etc. is copied using this function with [2-Sided Originals to 1-Sided Copies], copies can be adjusted to the same direction.

[IMAGE DIRECTION]:

- 1. Set
- 2. No setting

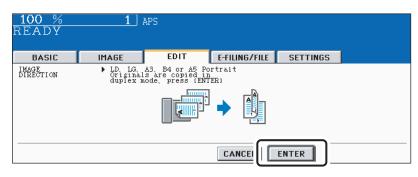


- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **Perform the setting of [1 -> 2 DUPLEX] (or [2 -> 1 SPLIT]).**P.125 "Duplex Copying"
- **4** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [IMAGE DIRECTION] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMACE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
JOB BUILD	HIAGE DIRECTION	BODK ↔ TABLET			Prev

- · The direction of the copy is adjusted by this operation.
- If the desired function button is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

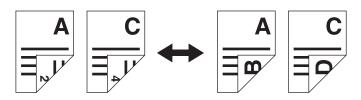
**5** Press the [ENTER] button.



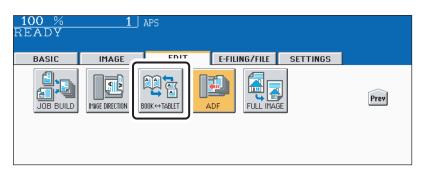
Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

When copying under the mode of 2-Sided Originals to 2-Sided-Copies, this function allows you to rotate the back side of the original to be copied by 180°. It is useful when 'open to left' (Book) originals need to be copied in 'open to top' (Tablet), and the opposite condition is available.



- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **?** Perform the setting of [2 -> 2 DUPLEX].
  - P.125 "Duplex Copying"
- **4** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [BOOK <-> TABLET] button.



- 'Open to left' originals are copied in 'open to top' and 'open to top' originals are copied in 'open to left' by this operation.
- If the desired function button is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

## **5** Press the [ENTER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
BASIC     IMAGE     EDIT     E-FILING/FILE     SETTINGS       BOOK<->TABLET     > When 2 -> 2, book type originals are copied tablet type originals are copied tablet type					
				ENTER	

Select other copy modes as required.

6 Press the [START] button.

## ADF / SADF

You can select the paper feeding mode when using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional). There are two ways to feed originals.

Continuous feed mode:	Originals placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder are continuously fed in after the [START] button is pressed. It is useful to select this mode for copying multiple originals at one time. (This is the initial setting at the time of the installation of the equip- ment.)
Single feed mode:	An original is automatically pulled in as soon as it is placed. It is recommended to select this mode for copying originals one by one.

- In the single feed mode, set the originals one after another. Setting more than one original could cause a tilted image or a paper jam.
- To set different size originals, see P.101 "Copying mixed-sized originals in one operation (mixed original size)".

### Continuous feed mode

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [SADF] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT FRUNG/FILE SETTINGS
JOB BUILD		BOOK↔TABLET

- If the [ADF] button is already displayed, the continuous feed mode is set. In this case, skip to step 5.
- If the desired function button is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

## **3** Press the [ADF] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
DOCUMENT FEEDI	ER 🕨 Select /	ADF or SADF			
ADF SADF					
	CANCEL				

Select other copy modes as required.

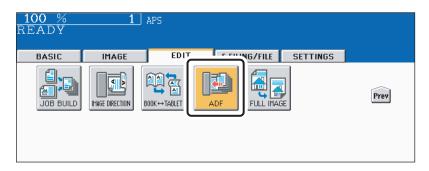
**4** Place the original(s) on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional).

P.72 "Using the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)"



### Single feed mode

- Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [ADF] button.



- If the [SADF] button is already displayed, the single feed mode is set. In this case, skip to step 4.
- If the desired function button is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

## **3** Press the [SADF] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
DOCUMENT FEEDE	ER 🕨 🕨 Select /	ADF or SADF			
CANCEL					

Select other copy modes as required.

## **4** Place the original on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.

• The original is automatically pulled in and the following menu is displayed.

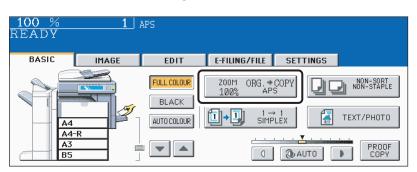
<u>100 %</u> READY	1 ;	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	>NEXT ORIG	YES	FINISHED		

If there are more originals, set them in the same way. (The same operation is performed whether or not you press the [YES] button.)

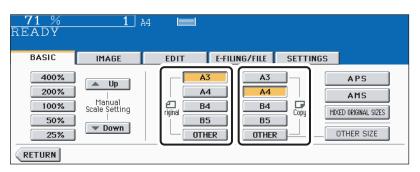
# **5** After all originals have finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

The full image of an original can be copied. It is useful to select this mode for copying an original with no less of image.

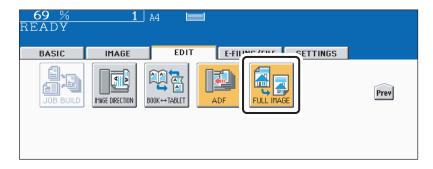
- **1** Place paper in the drawer.
- **2** Place an original.
- **3** Press the Reduction/Enlargement button.



▲ Specify each size of the original and the copy paper.



**5** Press the [EDIT] button to enter the edit menu, and then press the [FULL IMAGE] button.



- The copied image size will be 1 to 5% smaller than the normal one.
- Select other copy modes as required.



# e-FILING

This chapter explains how to use e-Filing and how to copy originals and store the data in a shared folder in one go.

e-Filing	202
Creating User Boxes	204
Changing Data of User Boxes	206
Deleting User Boxes	209
Storing Documents in e-Filing	211
Printing Stored Documents	216
Printing the whole document	
Test printing	218
Printing the stored document after changing the settings	219
Deleting Folders or Documents	221
Appendix	
Storing documents in the shared folder	

### e-Filing

This feature allows you to store, print and manage documents obtained by copying, printing from a PC, scanning, receiving Fax and receiving Internet Fax. The document is stored into the hard disc embedded in this equipment.

#### Tips

- To use documents received by Fax in e-Filing, a Fax Unit is required.
- When the Data Overwrite Kit (optional) is installed, it may take time before e-Filing can be used after the power is turned ON. This depends on the number of files in e-Filing.
- Delete the documents in e-Filing when they are no longer needed.

There are two kinds of e-Filing as follows.

#### Public box:

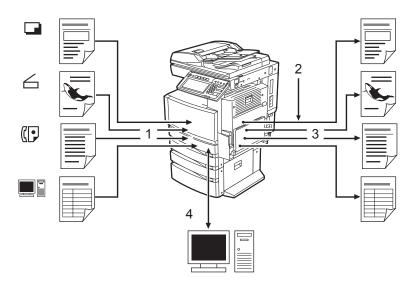
This is prepared as a default setting. This is used to store a shared document that can be accessed by any users without restrictions.

#### User box:

Up to 200 boxes can be created. Passwords can be set for each user box.

Up to 100 folders per one box can be created. A maximum of 400 documents can be stored in one folder. The maximum number of original pages is 200. (However, it may be restricted depending on the amount of free space on the hard disc embedded in this equipment.)

An outline of e-Filing is as follows.



- 1. Store a document into e-Filing.
- 2. Add a printing setting to the stored document as required.
- 3. Print the document.
- 4. Use the document on the PC. (See the e-Filing Guide for details.)

### Tips

- The stored document in e-Filing can be downloaded to a client PC by using the "File Downloader".
- The stored document in e-Filing can be imported as an image into the TWAIN-compatible application by the TWAIN driver.
- You can edit and back up the document, create a folder, etc. in the e-Filing using "TopAccess".

### Notes

- The available settings differ between when the operation is performed from the touch panel of this equipment or using "TopAccess" from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.
- When the preservation period for documents in e-Filing is specified, the stored documents will be deleted after this period has passed. You need to print the documents or download them into a client PC using the "File Downloader". See the e-Filing Guide for details. (For setting the storing period of the documents in e-Filing, ask the network administrator.)
- Be sure to back up the data stored in e-Filing regularly in case of a hard disc failure. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

This chapter explains about when copied original data are stored to e-Filing. See the e-Filing Guide for storing, printing and managing the document obtained by printing from a PC, scanning, receiving fax and receiving Internet Fax (except for copying) and operating e-Filing via network.

## **Creating User Boxes**

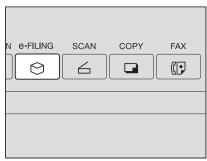
Up to 200 user boxes can be created. To prepare user boxes for different purposes enables you to have efficient document management.

Folders can be created in each user box. Also, password can be set to each user box.

 You can create folders using "TopAccess" from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

Set up a user box following the procedure below.





2 Select a blank box number between "001" and "200", and then press the [SETUP] button.

BOX LIST Select Box	
BOX NUMBER : 001	
Public Roy	004
001	005
002	006
003	007
SETUP DELETE EDIT	ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired box is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.
- **3** Press the [BOX NAME] button, and then enter the box name.

BOX SETUP Denter BOX name and Password(5-digit)
EAV WINDOW : 001 BOX NAME Password : SET Retype Password : RESET
CANCEL

When the [BOX NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 32 letters can be entered.

# **4** Key in the password in "Password" as required, and then press the [SET] button to fix it.

BOX SETUP DE	nter BOX name and Password(5-digit)
	BOX NUMBER : 001
	BOX NAME Mountains
	Password : *****
	Retype Password : RESET
	CANCEL

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

### **5** Key in the password in "Retype Password".

BOX SETUP Denter BOX name and Password(5-digit) BOX NUMBER : 001 BOX NAME Mountains
Password : ***** SET Retype Password : ***** Retype Password : *****
CANCEL

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

### 6 Press the [ENTER] button.

BOX SETUP Denter BOX na	me and Password(5-digit)
	BOX NUMBER : 001
	BOX NAME Mountains
	Password : ***** SET
	Retype Password : ***** RESET

The user box is created.

## **Changing Data of User Boxes**

Created user boxes and passwords can be changed.

#### Tip

You cannot change the folder name using the control panel of this equipment. It can be changed using "TopAccess" from a client PC. See the e-Filing Guide for details.

Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.	
	N e-FILING SCAN COPY FAX

### **2** Select the desired box, and then press the [EDIT] button.

BOX LIST Select Box	
BOX NUMBER : DO1	
Public Roy	004
001 Mountains	005
002	006
003	007
SETUP DELETE EDIT	ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired box is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.
- **3** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD DEnter Box Password (5-digit)				
	BOX NUMBER	:	001	
	BOX NAME	:	Mountains	
	Password		*****	
			CANCEI	ENTER

If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

### **A** Enter the new box name.

BOX MODIFY Finter BOX Name and Password(5-digit) BOX NAME : 001 BOX NAME : SET Retype Password : RESET
CANCEL

When [BOX NAME] is pressed, the letter entry menu (  $\square$  P.44) is displayed. A box name can contain up to 32 letters.

**5** Key in the new password in "Password", and then press the [SET] button to fix it.

BOX MODIFY Denter BOX Name and Password(5-digit)
BOX NUMBER : 001 BOX NAME River Password : SET Retype Password : RESET
CANCEL

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

### **6** Key in the password in "Retype Password".

BOX MODIFY DEnter BOX N	ame and Password(5-digit)
	BOX NUMBER : 001 BOX NAME River
	Password     SET       Retype Password     RESET

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

# 7 Press the [ENTER] button.

BOX MODIFY DEnter BOX Name and P	assword(5-digit)
BOX NUMBE BOX NAME Password Retype Pa	River

The box settings are updated.

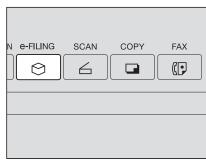
## **Deleting User Boxes**

Unnecessary user boxes can be deleted. All folders and documents in the user boxes are also deleted.

#### Note

Public box cannot be deleted.





2 Select the box you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.

BOX LIST Select Box	
BOX NUMBER : DO1	
Public Roy	004
001 Mountains	005
	006
002	006

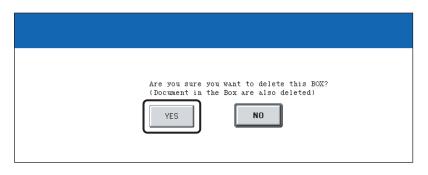
- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

**3** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD DEnter Box Password (5-digit)	
	BOX NUMBER : 001
	BOX NAME : Mountains
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

4 "Are you sure you want to delete this box?" appears. Press the [Yes] button to delete the box.



The box is deleted.

Scanned original data can be stored in e-Filing. The copy mode settings will be saved with the e-Filing document. You can copy originals and store the data at one time. After storing the original data, you can print them out at any time.

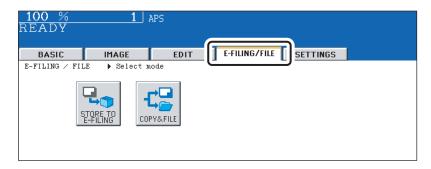
### Tips

- There are two types of e-Filing, public box and user boxes. To store the data in a user box, you need to set it up in advance. (
   P.204 "Creating User Boxes")
- The data scanned with the scanning function can be also stored in e-Filing. The stored data can be downloaded to the client PC as a JPEG, PDF or TIFF file. For details, refer to the e-Filing Guide.

### **1** Place the original(s).

- Up to 100 folders can be created in one e-Filing, and a maximum of 400 documents can be stored in one folder. The maximum number of original pages is 200. (However this may be restricted depending on the amount of free space of the hard disc in this equipment.)
- Set the copy mode as required.
- Twin colour or mono colour Images cannot be saved in e-Filing.

## **2** Press the [E-FILING/FILE] button to enter the e-Filing/file menu.



### **3** Press the [STORE TO E-FILING] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
E-FILING / FI	LE 🕨 🕨 Select 1	node			
		PY&FILE			

## **4** Press the [BOX/FOLDER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			_
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
STORE TO E-FII	BOX/FOLDER	OX AND FOLDER :			
	DOCUMENT NAME	DOCØ53106			
			CANCEL	ENTER	

**5** Select the box in which you want to store the document, and then press the [ENTER] button.

BOX LIST Select Box BOX NUMBER : 001	
Public Roy	004
001 Mountains	005
002	006
003	007
	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

#### When the password entry menu is displayed

When the password entry menu is displayed, the password is set in the selected user box. Key in the password and press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD DEnter Box Password (5-digit)		
	BOX NUMBER : 001	
	BOX NAME : Mountains	
	Password : ****	

# 6 The document list in the selected box is displayed. Press the [ENTER] button to store in this box.

STORE TO E-FILING > Select Storage Location			
Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
🔋 HAKKODA	21,15:10	A4	1
🔋 HAKKODA-001	21,15:13	A4	12
🗁 New	21,15:14		
	ENTER	1/1	

#### To store the document in the folder

To store the document in the folder, select the folder to be stored, press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. The document list in the selected folder is displayed. Press the [ENTER] button to store in this folder.

STORE TO E-FILING > Select Storage Location			
Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
HAKKODA-002	21,15:20	A4	1
CLOSE FOLDER CANCEL	ENTER	1/1	

- If you want to close the folder and go back to the box above, press the [CLOSE FOLDER] button.
- Creating the folder can be performed from the client PC using "TopAccess". For details, see e-Filing Guide.

# **7** Press the [DOCUMENT NAME] button, and then enter the document name.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
STORE TO E-FII	JING 🕨 Select b	oox and folde	r		
	BOX/FOLDER	BOX NUMBER :	001		
		BOX NAME :	Mountains		
		FOLDER NAME :	:		
	DOCUMENT NAME	)OCØ531Ø6	L	]	
			CANCEL	ENTER	

When the [DOCUMENT NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (  $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 64 letters can be entered.

## 8 Press the [ENTER] button.

100 % READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
STORE TO E-FII	JING 🕨 Select 1	box and folder			
	BOX/FOLDER	BOX NUMBER :	001		
		BOX NAME : [	lountains		
		FOLDER NAME :			
	DOCUMENT NAME	TANIGAWA			
			CANCEL	ENTER	

**9** "PRINT THIS DOCUMENT?" appears. Press the [YES] button to store and print it out at one time.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	>PRINT THI	S DOCUMENT ?	NO		
CANCEL					

If you want to store the document without printing it, press the [NO] button.

## **10** Press the [START] button.

The reading and storing of the documents starts.

#### Tip

When the original is placed on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) in the Single original feeding mode, the following menu is displayed. Setting the original on the original glass: When the next original is placed, the [YES] button and then the [START] button are pressed, storing of the document starts. Setting the original on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder in the single original feeding mode: When the next original is placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, storing of the document starts. After the last page has finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1.	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	>NEXT ORIG	YES	FINISHED		

```
6 e-FILING
```

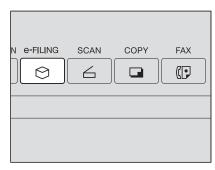
## **Printing Stored Documents**

Stored documents can be printed out. You can also print out a part of a document and change the setting in the finishing mode or the like before printing the documents.

## Printing the whole document

All pages of the document are printed. If printing multiple copies is desired, see  $\square$  P.219 "Printing the stored document after changing the settings".

## **1** Press the [e-FILING] button on the control panel.



2 Select the box in which the desired printing document is stored, and then press the [ENTER] button.

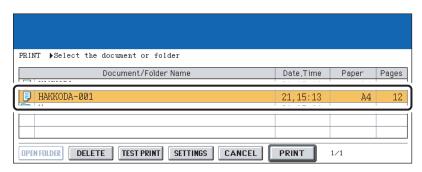
BOX LIST Select Box	
BOX NUMBER : DO1	
Public Roy	004
001 Mountains	005
002	006
003	007
SETUP DELETE EDIT	ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.
- **3** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD ▶Enter Box Password (5-digit)				
	BOX NUMBER	:	001	
	BOX NAME	:	Mountains	
	Password		****	
				·
			CANCEI	ENTER

If no password was set when the box was registered, skip to step 4.

## **4** Select the document to be printed.



To print a document in the folder, select the folder in which you want to print the document out and press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. Select the desired document on the menu.

## **5** Press the [PRINT] button.

PRINT <b>Select</b> the document or folder			
Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
🕞 HAKKODA	21,15:10	A4	1
🛃 HAKKODA-001	21,15:13	Α4	12
Dew New	21,15:14		
OPENFOLDER DELETE TEST PRINT SETTINGS CANCE	PRINT	1/1	

Printing starts.

#### To stop printing a stored document during the operation

Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 📖 P.262 "Job Status".

### **Test printing**

A part of a document of several pages can be printed out.

- **2** Press the [TEST PRINT] button.

PRINT Select the document or folder		
Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper Pages
HAKKODA-001	21,15:13	A4 12
OPEN FOLDER DELETE TEST PRINT TINGS CANCEL	PRINT	1/1

**3** Key in the number of the last page and press the [SET] button. Then key in the number of the first page.

TEST PRINT Denter the page range First Page Last Page	: 1 SET : 2 RESET
	CANCEL

- To correct the pages, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- To print all pages, press the [ALL PAGES] button.

## **4** Press the [PRINT] button.

TEST PRINT Denter the pa	ge range			
	First Page	: 1	SET	
	Last Page	ALL PAGES	RESET	
		CANCEI	PRINT	

Printing of the set pages starts.

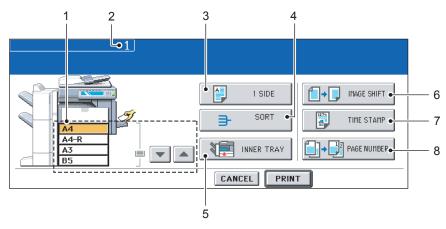
#### To stop printing a stored document during the operation

Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 📖 P.262 "Job Status".

## Printing the stored document after changing the settings

The following settings are available before the stored document is printed.

- Paper source (Press the drawer icon to be set as a paper source. However, the paper in the drawer selected for the paper source is used only when its size and type correspond to those of the documents in the box.)
- 2. Number of printings (Key them in.)
- 3. Simplex printing / duplex printing
- 4. Finishing mode (Selecting the mode is limited depending on the installed optional equipment.)
- 5. Paper exit (Available when the finisher (optional) is installed)
- 6. Image shift position
- 7. Added date and time position
- 8. Page number position



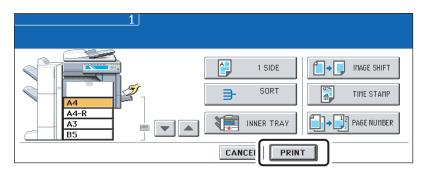
- **2** Press the [SETTINGS] button.

PRINT Select the document or folder			
Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
HAKKODA-001	21,15:13	Α4	12
OPEN FOLDER DELETE TEST PRINT SETTINGS CANCEL	PRINT	1/1	

## **3** Set the printing modes as required.

See the eight items mentioned above for the setting mode. To set items 3 to 8, press the button and set the required setting on the menu.

## **4** Press the [PRINT] button.



Printing starts.

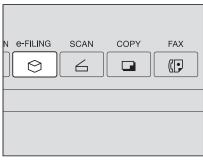
#### To stop printing a stored document during the operation

Select the job you want to stop from the print job menu or scan job menu, and then press the [DELETE] button. For details, see 📖 P.262 "Job Status".

## **Deleting Folders or Documents**

Unnecessary folders or documents can be deleted. If a folder is deleted, all documents in the folder are also deleted.





2 Select the box in which you want to delete the folder or document, and then press the [ENTER] button.

BOX LIST Select Box BOX NUMBER : 001	
Public Roy	004
001 Mountains	005
002	006
003	007
SETUP DELETE EDIT	ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired box is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the box number.

# **3** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected box, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD ▶Enter Box Password (5-digit)			
	BOX NUMBER	: 001	
	BOX NAME	: Mountains	
	Password	****	

If no password was set when the box was created, skip to step 4.

## **4** Select the folder or document to be deleted, and then press the [DELETE] button.

PRINT Select the document or folder			
Document/Folder Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages
HAKKODA-001	21,15:13	Α4	12
OPENFOLE DELETE ST PRINT SETTINGS CANCEL	PRINT	1/1	

#### To delete a document in the folder

To delete a document in the folder, select the folder in which you want to delete the document and press the [OPEN FOLDER] button. Select the desired document and press the [DELETE] button.

PRINT Select the document or folder			
HAKKODA-002	21,15:20	A4	1
OPENFOLE DELETE ST PRINT SETTINGS CANCEL	PRINT	1/1	

**5** "Are you sure you want to delete this folder?" or "Are you sure you want to delete this document?" appears. Press the [Yes] button to perform deletion.

AT.	e you sure you want to delete this folder? scuments in the folder are also deleted)	
	YES NO	

- The folder or document is deleted.
  - If a folder is deleted, all the documents in the folder are also deleted.

## Storing documents in the shared folder

Scanned original data can be stored in the shared folder. You can copy originals and store the data at the same time.

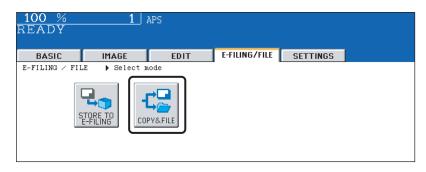
- Data can be stored in the TIFF or PDF format.
- Colour originals are stored in the black mode. They can be stored in the colour mode using the scanning function.
- Data can be stored in the [MFP LOCAL] (hard disc in the equipment) as well as [REMOTE 1] and [REMOTE 2] (hard disc of a computer connected with the equipment in the network).
- See "6. Copy & File" in the Scanning Guide for details.

## Place the original(s).

**2** Press the [E-FILING/FILE] button on the basic menu to enter the e-Filing/file menu.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS	
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE SETTINGS
E-FILING / FI	LE 🕨 🕨 Select 1	lode	
S		PY&FILE	

**3** Press the [SCAN TO FILE] button.



## **4** Press the [FILE NAME] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
MARY & PITE	•				
FILE NAME	OC060806				
	\MFP-04993827\	FILE_SHARE\	PDF (MULTI) PDF	(SINGLE) TIFF (ML	JLTI) TIFF(SINGLE)
REMOTE 1	\tec\mfp001\				
REMOTE 2	\tec\mfp002\				
			CANCEL	ENTER	

When the [FILE NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44 "Setting letters") is displayed. Up to 45 letters can be entered.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
COPY & FILE					
	River				
MFP LOCAL	\MFP-04993827\	FILE_SHARE\	PDF (MULTI) PDF	(SINGLE) TIFF (MU	ILTI) TIFF(SINGLE)
REMOTE 1	<pre>\tec\mfp001\</pre>				
REMOTE 2	\\tec\mfp002\				
			CANCEL	ENTER	

## **5** Select the destination you want to store the data.

- Any two of the destinations [MFP LOCAL], [REMOTE 1] and [REMOTE 2] can be selected at one time.
- If you press the [REMOTE 1] or [REMOTE 2] button, you may need to specify the computer in which you want to store the data. See "3. SCAN TO FILE" in the Scanning Guide for details.

6 Select the format in which the data are stored.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS		
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS
COPY & FILE			 	
FILE NAME	River			
MFP LOCAL	\\MFP-04993827\	FILE_SHARE\	PDF (MULTI) PDF	(SINGLE) TIFF (MULTI) TIFF (SINGLE)
REMOTE 1	\\tec\mfp001\		<u> </u>	
REMOTE 2	\\tec\mfp002\			
			CANCEL	ENTER

#### PDF (MULTI)

Scanned originals are stored as one PDF file.

#### PDF (SINGLE)

A folder is created and each page of the scanned original is stored into this folder separately as a PDF file.

E.g.: A three-page original is stored as three PDF files.

TIFF (MULTI)

Scanned originals are stored as one TIFF file.

#### TIFF (SINGLE)

A folder is created and each page of the scanned original is stored into this folder separately as a TIFF file.

E.g.: A three-page original is stored as three TIFF files.

## Press the [ENTER] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1	APS			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
COPY & FILE					
FILE NAME	River				
MFP LOCAL	\\MFP-04993827\\FILE_SHARE\ PDF(MULTI)			(SINGLE) TIFF (ML	JLTI) TIFF (SINGLE)
REMOTE 1	\\tec\mfp001\				
REMOTE 2	\\tec\mfp002\		_		
				ENTER	

## 8 Press the [START] button.

- The scanning, storing and copying of the documents starts.
- All the documents are stored and copied in the black mode.

#### Tip

When the original is placed on the original glass or on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) in the single original feeding mode, the following menu is displayed. Setting the original on the original glass: When the next original is placed, the [YES] button and then the [START] button are pressed, storing of the document starts. Setting the original on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder in the single original feeding mode: When the next original is placed on the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder, storing of the document starts. After the last page has finished being scanned, press the [FINISHED] button.

<u>100 %</u> READY	1 i	A4 🔲			
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE	SETTINGS	
	>NEXT ORIG	YES	FINISHED		

## TEMPLATE

This chapter explains how to use templates.

Template	
Template in "Useful Template"	
Registering User Groups and Templates	230
Registering a template in the public template group	
Registering the new user group	
Registering a template in the user group	
Changing Data of User Groups and Templates	
Changing the data of a user group	
Changing the data of a template	
Recalling Templates	
When recalling a template in a public group	
When recalling a template in a user group	
Deleting User Groups or Templates	
Deleting a user group	
Deleting a template	

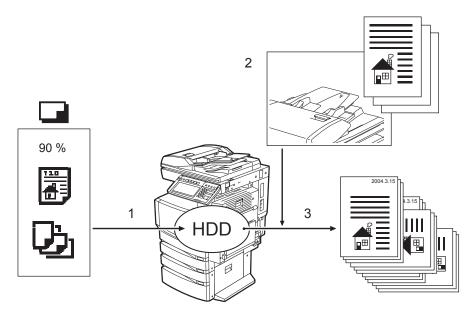
7

## Template

A combination of functions frequently used can be registered as a template and recalled as required. Templates can be used with the copy, scanning and Fax functions.

• To use Fax functions, the optional Fax Unit is required.

The following illustration shows the outline of a template function.



- 1. Register the combination of the functions to the template.
- 2. Place the original.
- 3. Recall the desired template, and then make a copy.

## Template in "Useful Template"

In this equipment, 12 templates are included by default. They are registered to be available in the user group number 001 "Useful Template".

To recall the template, see 📖 P.253 "When recalling a template in a user group".

Select a T	EMPLATE		18.02.2006 13:54				
RECALL	REGIST	RATION					
C 2i AC	n1 S-S S		95%Copy ACS Reduction		ACS APS Mixed Org		Twin Color Black & Red
	oF S Text lor sPDF	5	StoF D Text Color sPDF	5	StoF S T&P Bk 400 PDF		StoB S Text ACS 300
_	5 T&P S-S		CtoB ACS T&P D-S	€ <mark>©</mark>	CtoB & Copy ACS T&P S-D	<b>•</b>	DualPAGEtoB ACS T&P S-S
				CAN			1/5 Next

#### Template using the copying function

Button	Function *1
2in1 S-S ACS	"1-sided original -> 1-sided copy" is performed in the auto colour and 2IN1 mode.
95%Copy ACS Reduction	Reduction copy by 95% is performed in the auto colour mode.
ACS APS Mixed Org	Mixed-size originals are copied in the auto colour mode.
Twin Color Black & Red	Twin colour (RED&BLACK) copy is made.

#### Template using the scanning function

Button	Function <sup>*1</sup>
StoF S Text Color sPDF	A 1-sided original is scanned in the full colour and text mode, then stored in the shared folder of this equipment as a high compression PDF file (multi).
StoF D Text Color sPDF	A 2-sided original is scanned in the full colour and text mode, then stored in the shared folder of this equipment as a high-compression PDF file (multi).
StoF S T&P Bk 400 PDF	A 1-sided original is scanned in the black and text mode at 400 dpi resolu- tion, then stored in the shared folder of this equipment as a high-compres- sion PDF file (multi).
StoB S Text ACS 300	A 1-sided original is scanned in the auto colour and text mode at 300 dpi resolution, then stored in the e-Filing box of this equipment.

#### Template using the e-Filing function

Button	Function <sup>*1</sup>
CtoB 🔦 ACS T&P S-S	Data are read in the auto colour and text/photo mode and with "1-sided original -> 1-sided copy", then stored in the e-Filing box. Data are not copied.
CtoB Stor ACS T&P D-S	Data are read in the auto colour and text/photo mode and with "2-sided original -> 1-sided copy", then stored in the e-Filing box. Data are not copied.
CtoB & Copy ACS T&P S-D	Data are read in the auto colour and text/photo mode and with "1-sided original -> 1-sided copy" using the dual-page mode, then stored in the e-Filing box. Data are also copied.
DualPAGEtoB	"1-sided original -> 2-sided copy" is performed in the auto colour and text/ photo mode, then the data are stored in the e-Filing box. Data are also copied.

\*1 The functions not described in the "Function" field are set by default.

## **Registering User Groups and Templates**

A template can be registered either in "PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP" or "USER GROUP" depending on your purpose. Passwords can be set to restrict the unauthorized use of a template.

#### PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP:

This is prepared as a default setting. Anyone can use a template registered in this group. It is useful if the setting combinations of functions frequently used throughout the company or organization are registered in this group. Up to 60 templates can be registered. When registering a template in the public template group, keying in the Admin Password is required.

#### **USER GROUP:**

Up to 200 groups can be registered. It is useful if you register each department, section or person as a user group. Up to 60 templates can be registered in each group. Passwords can be set for the user groups.

"Useful Template" is registered to be available in user group number 001.

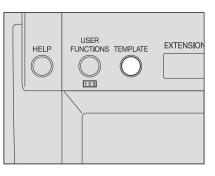
### Registering a template in the public template group



#### Set every function you want to include in the combination.

e.g.: Setting "Image shift", "90% reduction" and "10 sets of copies" of the copy function.

**2** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**?** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP           RECALL         REGISTRATION	
GROUP Number	004
001 Useful Template	005
002	006
003	007
DELETE EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

## **4** Press the [PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP], and then press the [ENTER] button.

Select a GROUP	
RECALL REGISTRATION	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004
DOL OSEIUI LEMPIALE	005
002	006
003	007
DELETE	CANCEI ENTER 1/26 Next

## 5 Press the [PASSWORD] button.

ADMINISTRATOR PASSWORD	
	SWORD
	CANCEL

The letter entry menu is displayed.

6 Key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys, and then press the [ENTER] button.

#### Note

If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.

kxxxxxx*_	
! " # \$ % & ` ( ) = ~   ` ( )	Back Space
* < > ? ^ @ + [ ] ; : / \	+ +
Q W E R T Y U I O P	
A S D F G H J K L	
Z X C V B N M , . Shift	Caps Lock

The corresponding buttons of the template registered in the public template group are displayed.

**7** Press the blank key, and then press the [SAVE] button.

Select a TEMPLATE		
RECALL REGIS	TDATION	
COPY MODE		
	DELETE EDIT	1/5 Next

**8** Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the template name.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
AT	TE GROUP	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1	OPY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
NAME 2	82	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
PASSWORD		

#### Notes

- [NAME 1] is displayed on the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed on the lower side of the template button. Enter [NAME 1] and/or [NAME 2]. When both are entered, [NAME 1] is displayed on the upper side and [NAME 2] on the lower side of the button.
- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( P.44) is displayed. Up to 11 letters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2]. ["], [=], []], [\*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [], [,], [.]

**9** Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the template as required.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
PUBLIC TEMPLAT	TE GROUP	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 CO	OPY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
	02	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME	JEST	
		CANCEL

When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( P.44) is displayed. Up to 30 letters can be entered.

**10** Key in the password in "Password" as required, and then press the [SET] button to fix it.

RECALL	REGISTRATION				
PUBLIC TEMPLAT (PASSWORD:5-di				_	
	Pass	sword :	****	<u> </u> [[	SET
	Rety	jpe Password :		] []	RESET
				NCEL	ENTER

- · Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

#### Key in the password in "Retype Password", and then press the 11 [ENTER] button to fix it.

RECALL REGIST	RATION
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP (PASSWORD:5-digit)	
	Password : ***** SET
	Retype Password : *****

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

# **12** Select whether to enable "AUTOMATIC START" or not when the template is recalled.

RECALL	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 COPY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
NAME 2 002	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME GUEST	
PASSWORD ***	
	CANCEL

Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.

#### Tip

When [ENABLE] is selected, the I icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the I icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

## **13** Press the [SAVE] button.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
PUBLIC TEMPLAT	TE GROUP	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 CO	PY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
NAME 2 00	12	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME GL	JEST	
PASSWORD *	***	

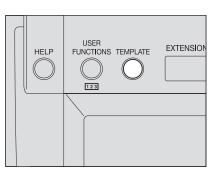
The screen returns to the one of step 1, which is the menu before the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel is pressed.

## Registering the new user group

#### Tip

A template can be registered continuously after a new user group has been registered. When you want to register a template continuously, set every function you want to include in the combination, and then perform step 1.

**1** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**2** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP			
GROUP Number PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004		
001 Useful Template	005		
002	006		
003	007		
DELETE	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next		

**3** Select an unregistered user group between "002" and "200", and then press the [ENTER] button.

Select a GROU	Р				
RECALL	REGISTRATION				
GROUP Number	002				
PUBLIC T	EMPLATE GROUP		004		
001 Useful T	'emplate		005		
002			006		
005			007		
	DELE	TE EDIT		ENTER	1/26 Next

## **4** Press the [NAME] button, and then enter the user group name.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	INAME IOMMON
	CANCEL

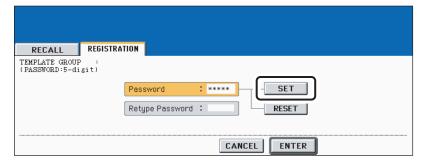
When the [NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( P.44) is displayed. Up to 20 letters can be entered.

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.
- **5** Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the user group as required.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	
	USER NAME ISERØ1

When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 30 letters can be entered.

# 6 Key in the password in "Password" as required, and then press the [SET] button to fix it.



- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

## 7 Key in the password in "Retype Password", and then press the [ENTER] button to fix it.

RECALL REGISTR	ATION
TEMPLATE GROUP : (PASSWORD:5-digit)	-
	Password : *****
	Retype Password : *****

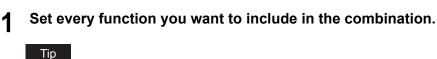
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

### **8** Press the [ENTER] button.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	:
	NAME COMMON
	USER NAME USER01
	PASSWORD ***

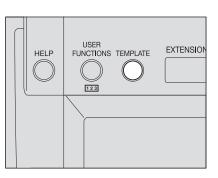
- The user group is registered and the registration menu for template appears.
- If you want to register a template continuously, start from step 6 on p.235.
- To end only with the user group registration, press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel. The screen will return to the basic menu.

### Registering a template in the user group



e.g.: Setting "Image shift", "90% reduction" and "10 sets of copies" of the copy function.

**2** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**3** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP	
GROUP Number	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004
001 Useful Template	005
002 COMMON	006
003	007
DELETE EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

**A** Select the desired user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.

Select a GROUN		
RECALL	REGISTRATION	
GROUP Number	002	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP		004
001 Useful Template		005
002 COMMON		006
005		007
	DELE	CANCEI ENTER 1/26 Next

If the desired user group is not displayed, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

**5** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD			
(5-digit)	NAME	: COMMON	
	USER NAME	- USER01	
			<u> </u>
			J

If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 6.

6 The corresponding buttons of the template registered in the user group are displayed. Press the blank key, and then press the [SAVE] button.

Select a TEMP	LATE						
RECALL	REGISTOA						
	MODE						
	[	DELETE	EDIT	CANCEI	SAVE	1/5	Next

## **7** Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the template name.

RECALL REGISTRATION	
UP : COMMON	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 VOPY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
NAME 2 102	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
PASSWORD	

#### Notes

- [NAME 1] is displayed in the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed in the lower side of the template button. Enter [NAME 1] and/or [NAME 2]. When both are entered, [NAME 1] is displayed in the upper side and [NAME 2] is displayed in the lower side of the button.
- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (
   P.44) is displayed. Up to 11 letters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2]. ["], [=], []], [\*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [,], [,]

# 8 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the user name of the template as required.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROUP	P : COMMON	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1	OPY MODE	ENABLE
0	32	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME	JESTØ1	
PHOO WUKU		

When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 30 letters can be entered.

# **9** Key in the password in "Password" as required, and then press the [SET] button to fix it.

RECALL REGISTRA	TION
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMM (PASSWORD:5-digit)	ON
	Password : *****
	Retype Password : RESET
	CANCEL

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

# **10** Key in the password in "Retype Password", and then press the [ENTER] button to fix it.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP (PASSWORD:5-d)	
	Password : *****
	Retype Password : *****

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

## **11** Select whether to enable "AUTOMATIC START" or not when the template is recalled.

RECALL REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROUP : COMMON	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 COPY MODE	ENABLE
NAME 2 002	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME GUEST01	
PASSWORD ****	

Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.

#### Tip

When [ENABLE] is selected, the I icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the I icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

## 12 Press the [SAVE] button.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROUP	COMMON :	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 CO	PY MODE	ENABLE DISABLE
NAME 2 00	12	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME GU	ESTØ1	
PASSWORD **	***	

The screen returns to the one of step 1, which is the menu before the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel is pressed.

## **Changing Data of User Groups and Templates**

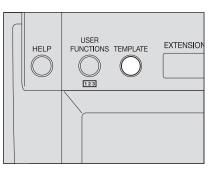
Registered names, user names and passwords of user groups or templates, and the automatic start setting of a template can be changed.

#### Note

The data of a public group cannot be changed.

## Changing the data of a user group

**1** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP	ATION	
GROUP Number		
PUBLIC TEMPLATE	GROUP	004
001 Useful Template		005
002 COMMON		006
003		007
	DELETE	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

**3** Select the user group you want to change, and then press the [EDIT] button.

Select a GROU	P	
RECALL	REGISTRATION	
GROUP Number	002	
PUBLIC TH	EMPLATE GROUP	004
001 Ilseful T	emplate	005
002 COMMON		006
005		 007
	DELE	ANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

## **4** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : COMMON
	USER NAME : USER01
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.

**5** Press the [NAME] button, and then enter the new name of the user group.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	
	CANCEL

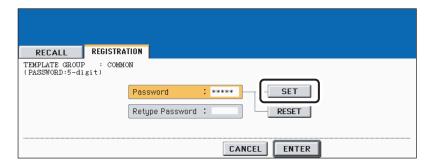
When the [NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 20 letters can be entered.

# 6 Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the new user name of the user group.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	
	USER NAME USER NAME PRSSWUKU
	CANCEL

When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 30 letters can be entered.

7 Key in the new password in "Password", and then press the [SET] button to fix it.



- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

**8** Key in the password in "Retype Password", and then press the [ENTER] button to fix it.

RECALL	REGISTRAT	ON
TEMPLATE GROUP (PASSWORD:5-di		ſ
		Password : ****
		Retype Password : ***** RESET

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

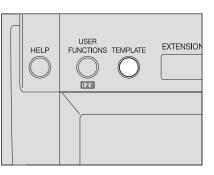
### **9** Press the [ENTER] button.

RECALL	REGISTRATION
TEMPLATE GROUP	: COMMON
	NAME LOCAL
	USER NAME USER02
	PASSWORD ****

The data of the user group are changed.

### Changing the data of a template

**1** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**2** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP	
GROUP Number	004
FUBLIC TENFLATE GROUP	004
001 Useful Template	005
002 LOCAL	006
003	007
DELETE EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

**3** Select the group in which the template to be changed was registered, and then press the [ENTER] button.

Select a GROUI	P				
RECALL	REGISTRATION				
GROUP Number	002				
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP			004		
nnillseful Template			005		
002 LOCAL			006		
L 003			007		
	DELE		CANCE	ENTER	1/26 Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

#### 4 Enter the following password, and then press the [ENTER] button. When the public group is selected:

Press the [PASSWORD] button, and then key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys.

If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.

#### When the user group is selected:

Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group. (If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.)

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : LOCAL
	USER NAME : USER02
	Password : ****

Select the template to be changed, and then press the [EDIT] button.

Select a TEMPLATE			
RECALL REGIS	TRATION		
COPY MODE ØØ1	COPY MODE 002		
	DELETI ] EDIT	ANCEL	1/5 Next

If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

# 6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : COPY MODE 002
	USER NAME : GUESTO1
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

**7** Press the [NAME1] button and the [NAME2] button, and then enter the new name of the template.

RECALL REGISTRATION	
UP : LOCAL	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 COPY MODE	ENABLE
NAME 2 105	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
PASSWORD	
	CANCEL

#### Notes

- When the [NAME 1] or [NAME 2] button is pressed, the letter entry menu (P.44) is displayed. Up to 11 letters can be entered.
- The following symbols cannot be used for [NAME 1] and [NAME 2]. ["], [=], []], [\*], [<], [>], [?], [+], [[], []], [;], [:], [/], [], [,], [.]

# **8** Press the [USER NAME] button, and then enter the new user name of the template.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROUP	: LOCAL	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1 CO	PY MODE	ENABLE
00	15	This icon is indicated when an automat start is enabled.
USER NAME 19	ERØ5	
THOO YY UKU		

When the [USER NAME] button is pressed, the letter entry menu ( $\square$  P.44) is displayed. Up to 30 letters can be entered.

**9** Key in the new password in "Password", and then press the [SET] button to fix it.

DECALL	REGISTRATION	1				
RECALL						
TEMPLATE GROUP (PASSWORD:5-di						
	Pas	sword :	****	- SE	r I	
	Retu	pe Password :		RESE	T	
			CAN		TER	

- Be sure to key in the 5-digit password.
- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.
- When the [SET] button is pressed, "Retype Password" becomes highlighted.

**10** Key in the password in "Retype Password", and then press the [ENTER] button to fix it.

RECALL REGISTRATI	ON
TEMPLATE GROUP : LOCAL (PASSWORD:5-digit)	
[	Password : ***** SET
	Retype Password : *****

- \* (asterisk) is displayed in "Retype Password" when the password is entered.
- To correct the entered password, press the [CLEAR] button on the control panel.

## **11** Change the setting of "AUTOMATIC START" for recalling the template.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROU	P : LOCAL	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1	OPY MODE	ENABLE
NAME 2	05	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME U	SER05	
PASSWORD	****	
		CANCEL

Press the [ENABLE] or [DISABLE] button.

#### Tip

When [ENABLE] is selected, the I icon is added to the template button. (The operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button with the icon when the template is recalled. However, if a password is set for the template, you need to key it in when an operation with the function set to the template is performed, though automatic start is enabled.)

## **12** Press the [ENTER] button.

RECALL	REGISTRATION	
TEMPLATE GROU	P : LOCAL	AUTOMATIC START
NAME 1	OPY MODE	ENABLE
NAME 2	05	This icon is indicated when an automatic start is enabled.
USER NAME U	SER05	
PASSWORD	жжж	

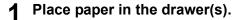
The data of the template are changed.

## **Recalling Templates**

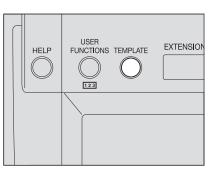
When a template is recalled, the registered setting functions of the template are reflected in the equipment.

If [ENABLE] is selected for "AUTOMATIC START" when the template is registered, operation of the setting functions is automatically started by pressing the template button.

#### When recalling a template in a public group



- Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



#### **A** Press the [PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP].

Select a GROUP	
RECALL REGISTRATION	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004
UUI USETUL TEMPLATE	005
002 LOCAL	006
003	007
	CANCEL 1/26 Next

# **5** Press the desired template button.

Select a TEMPLATE			
RECALL REGIST	COPY MODE		
		CANCEL	1/5 Next

- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- If you press the template button with the **I** icon, the operation of the registered setting functions is automatically started.

# 6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : COPY MODE 002
	USER NAME : GUEST
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

Confirm that "Updated the template setting" appears on the menu.

100 ] APS pdated the template setting E-FILING/FILE SETTINGS BASIC IMAGE EDIT Z00M ORG. + COPY FULL COLOUR NON-SORT NON-STAPLE 100% BLACK 1 → 1 SIMPLEX ТЕХТ/РНОТО AUTO COLOUR Α4 A4-R Α3 PROOF COPY  $\mathbf{T}$ ② AUTO ₽ B5

Select other copy modes as required.

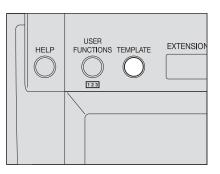
8 Press the [START] button.

#### 252 Recalling Templates

7

#### When recalling a template in a user group

- **1** Place paper in the drawer(s).
- **2** Place the original(s).
- **3** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



4 Select the user group in which the template to be recalled is registered.

Select a GROU	Р		
RECALL	REGISTRATION		
GROUP Number	002		
PUBLIC T	EMPLATE GROUP	004	
001 Useful 1	'emplate	005	
002 LOCAL		006	
005		 007	
		CANCEL	1/26 Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

# 5 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD	
(5-digit)	
	NAME : LOCAL
	USER NAME : USER02
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 6.

#### 6 Press the desired template button.

Select a TEMPLATE	17101		
COPY MODE	COPY MODE		
		CANCEL	1/5 Next

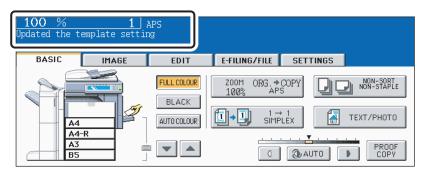
- If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- If you press the template button with the 
  icon, the operation of the registered setting functions is automatically started.

# 7 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD	
(5-digit)	
	NAME : COPY MODE 005
	USER NAME : USER05
	Password : *****

If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 8.

# 8 Confirm that "Updated the template setting" appears on the menu.



Select other copy modes as required.

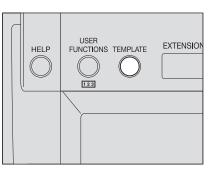
### **9** Press the [START] button.

# **Deleting User Groups or Templates**

Unnecessary user groups and templates can be deleted. If a user group is deleted, all templates in the user group are also deleted.

#### Deleting a user group

**1** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**2** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP	
GROUP Number	
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004
001 Useful Template	005
002 LOCAL	006
003	007
DELETE EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

**3** Select the user group you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.

Select a GROUI				
RECALL	REGISTRATION			
GROUP Number	002			
PUBLIC TE	EMPLATE GROUP			004
001 Useful T	emplate			005
002 LOCAL				006
005			007	
	DELE	TE	EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

# **4** Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : LOCAL
	USER NAME : USER02
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.

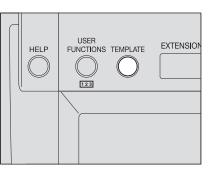
### **5** "DELETE OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.

DELETE O	K?	
DELETE	CANCEL	

The selected user group is deleted.

#### **Deleting a template**

**1** Press the [TEMPLATE] button on the control panel.



**2** Press the [REGISTRATION] button on the touch panel.

Select a GROUP				
GROUP Number				
PUBLIC TEMPLATE GROUP	004			
001 Useful Template	005			
002 LOCAL	006			
003	007			
DELETE	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next			

**3** Select the group in which the template to be deleted is registered, and then press the [ENTER] button.

Select a GROU	P		
RECALL	REGISTRATION		
GROUP Number	002		
PUBLIC TH	EMPLATE GROUP		004
001 Useful T	emplate		005
002 LOCAL			006
003			007
	DELE	TE EDIT	CANCEL ENTER 1/26 Next

- If the desired user group is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.
- To display the applicable menu immediately, key in the user group number.

# **4** Enter the following password, and then press the [ENTER] button. When the public group is selected:

Press the [PASSWORD] button, and then key in the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits) with the keys on the letter entry menu and the digital keys.

#### Note

If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.

#### When the user group is selected:

Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected user group. (If no password was set when the user group was registered, skip to step 5.)

PASSWORD (5-digit)	
	NAME : LOCAL
	USER NAME : USER02 Pessword : *****

# **5** Select the template you want to delete, and then press the [DELETE] button.

Select a TEMPLATE	
RECALL REGIS	TDATION
COPY MODE 001	
	DELETE DEDIT CANCEL SAVE 1/5 Hext

If the desired template is not displayed on the menu, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the menu.

# 6 Key in the password (5 digits) for the selected template, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PASSWORD	
(5-digit)	
	NAME : COPY MODE 005
	USER NAME : USER05
	Password : ****

If no password was set when the template was registered, skip to step 7.

#### **7** "DELETE OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.

DELETE OK?	
DELETE	CANCEL

The selected template is deleted.

8

# **JOB STATUS**

This chapter explains how to confirm the status of jobs in waiting, the status of performed jobs, and so on. The error codes are also explained.

Job Status	
Confirming Print Job Status	
Print jobs	
Proof print jobs	
Private print jobs	
When using department codes	275
Confirming Scan Job Status	278
Log List	279
Confirming job history in log list	
Registering into address book from log lists	
Printing journals (send/receive log list)	
Print Status Display	
Releasing print job errors	
Error Code	290

### **Job Status**

When you press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel, the job status menu is displayed. The following information can be confirmed on this menu.

- Status of jobs (print, Fax, Internet Fax and scan) in waiting
- · Log list of jobs (print, sending/receiving, scan) performed
- Print status

You can also start, pause, release, delete and move the job in waiting. For the status confirmation of the Fax job, see the Operator's Manual for Facsimile Function. (The FAX Unit (optional) is necessary for the Fax function.)

#### Tip

When the equipment is managed under the user management function ( P.47), enter the user information (e.g. user name, password) before pressing the [JOB STATUS] button.

You can confirm the status of the print job. The following information is displayed in a list.

Printing Press JOB STA	1 TUS to return	A4			P P	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L I	.06	S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	
User01		28,18:16	A4	1	1	Printing	PROOF
User02		28,18:30	A4	2	1	Wait	PRIVATE
User03		28,18:40	A4	1	1	Wait	
RETURN	ELETE	SE MOVE	E	пт	RELEAS	E 1/	 ′1

User Name:	Name of user for whom the job was registered
Date, Time:	Date and time the job was registered
Paper:	Paper size to be printed
Pages:	Number of pages to be printed
Sets:	Number of sets to be printed
Status:	Status of jobs ("Scheduled" is displayed for the scheduled print.)

#### Tip

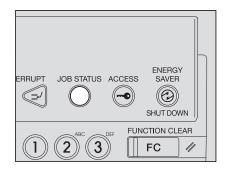
4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 250 pages (1000 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

#### **Print jobs**

Copying and printing of the document, and printing of an E-mail, etc. are called print jobs. Print jobs can be deleted, paused and released, moved, and printed on the print job list.

#### **Displaying print job list**

#### **1** Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel. The print job list is displayed.



#### **Deleting print jobs**

**1** Select the job you want to delete on the print job list, then press the [DELETE] button.

Printing	1	Α4			<b></b> P.	RINTING		
Press JOB STA PRINT	TUS to return FAX	SCAN	L	06	S	TATUS		
PRINT JOB		<b></b>	-	_				PRINT
User01	r Name	Date,Time 28, 18:40	Paper A4	Pages 1	Sets 1	Status Wait		PROOF
User02		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait		PRIVATE
User04		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Wait	]-	INVALID
RETURN	PAU	SE MOVE	ED	п	RELEAS	E 1	./1	

If the subject job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

### **2** "Delete OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.

Delete OK?	CANCEL	

The job is deleted.

### **Pausing print jobs**

The 11th job or later counting from the one in progress can be paused.

# **1** Select the job you want to pause on the print job list, then press the [PAUSE] button.

rinting ress JOB STA'	1 TUS to return	Α4			P.	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.06	S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	
User11		28,18:40	A4	1	1	Wait	PROOF
User12		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait	PRIVAT
040		00.40.40			~		
User14		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Wait	
RETURN	PAU	SE MOVE	E	TI	RELEAS	E 3	1/3 Pi

- When the [PAUSE] button is pressed, the display of this button changes to [RESUME].
- When the job is paused, the next job is started.

#### **Releasing print job**

Press the [RESUME] button. A job once paused will not be printed out unless the [RESUME] button is pressed.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.06	S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	
User11		28,18:40	A4	1	1	Wait	PROOF
User12		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait	PRIVATI
User13		28,18:42	A4	1	2	Wait	
User14		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Paused	
RETURN	ELETE	MOVE	E	лт [	RELEAS	SE 3/3	

#### Moving print jobs

The 11th job or later counting from the one in progress can be moved.

**1** Select the job you want to move on the print job list, then press the [MOVE] button.

	1	A4			P P	RINTING		
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.06	S	TATUS		
PRINT JOB							[	PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status		PROOF
User11		28,18:40	Α4	1	1	Wait	14	PROOF
User12		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait		PRIVATE
User14		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Wait		INVALID
RETURN	ELETE PAU	SE MOVE	E	п	RELEAS	iE 3	/3	Pre

If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

2 Select the position where you want to move the job. (The job comes right under the job you selected on the list.)

	1	A4			🕎 P.	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB		1 1					PRINT
User01		28,18:16	Α4	1	1	Printin	
User03		28,18:42	Α4	1	- 2	Wait	INVALID
User04	ELETE PAU	28,18:46	A4	2	1 RELEAS	Wait	1/3 Next

Printing	1	Α4			🔤 P.	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.06	S	FATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	
User01		28,18:16	A4	1	1	Printing	PROOF
User14		28,18:41	Α4	2	2	Wait	PRIVATE
User02		28,18:42	A4	1	2	Wait	
User03		28,18:46	λ4	2	1	Wait	
RETURN	ELETE	SE MOVE	E	лт (	RELEAS	E 1/3	Next

#### **Proof print jobs**

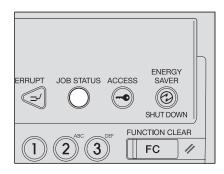
"Proof print" is a function to print only 1 set as a proof print when you print more than one set of documents from a client PC on the network before you print out all the sets of the documents. You can check this proof print and then select whether you print the rest of the documents or quit printing to change the setting on the proof print job list. If you want to print the rest, you can change the number of printouts.

For details of proof print, see the Printing Guide.

### Displaying proof print job list

**1** Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.

The print job list is displayed.





	1	Α4			P.	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	ι	.06	S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	
User01		28,18:16	A4	1	1	Printing	PROOF
User02		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait	PRIVATE
User03		28,18:42	A4	1	2	Wait	
User04		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Wait	
	ELETE PAU	SE MOVE	E	лт [	RELEAS	SE 1/2	3 Next

The proof print job list is displayed.

Continuing printing after proof printing

**1** Select the job you want to print on the proof print job list.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS		
PROOF PRINT JO	ΡB					PRINT
User01			21,17:26	84 1	12	PROOF
						PRIVATI
						INVALID
RETURN	ELETE PAU	SE MOVE	EDIT	RELEASE	1/1	

If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

# **2** Press the [RELEASE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		STATUS	;	
PROOF PRINT JO	Β						PRINT
	User Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01			21,17:26	A4	1	12	PROOF
							PRIVATE
							INVALID
RETURN	PAU	SE MOVE	EDIT	RELE	ASE	1/1	

Printing starts.

• The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

#### When you want to change the number of sets

When you want to change the number of sets, press the [EDIT] button and key in the desired number. Then press the [RELEASE] button to start printing.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS
	FileName Owner Pages Sets	FI	oject-01. txt er01 1	
RETURN				RELEASE

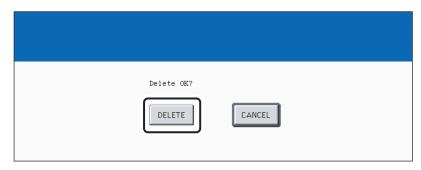
#### **Deleting proof print jobs**

1 Select the job you want to delete on the proof print job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS		
PROOF PRINT JO	)B					PRINT
User01			21,17:26	A4 1	12	PROOF
						PRIVATE INVALID
RETURN	PAU	SE MOVE	EDIT	RELEASE	1/1	

If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

# **2** "Delete OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.



The job is deleted.

#### **Private print jobs**

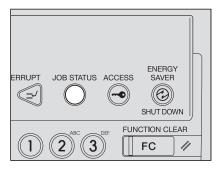
"Private print" is a function to print a document from a client PC on the network only when a previously set password is keyed in from the control panel of this equipment. This function is useful when you want to print confidential documents.

For details of private print jobs, see the Printing Guide.

## Displaying private print job list

Press the [JOB STATUS] but-1 ton on the control panel.

The print job list is displayed.



#### **2** Press the [PRIVATE] button.

	1	Α4			P.	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.06	S	FATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	PPOOF
User01		28,18:16	A4	1	1	Printing	
User02		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait	PRIVATE
User03		28,18:42	A4	1	2	Wait	
User04		28,18:46	Α4	2	1	Wait	
RETURN	DELETE PAU	SE MOVE	E	DIT (	RELEAS	E 1	/3 Next

# **3** Select the appropriate user name.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	
PRIVATE PRINT	JOB				PRINT
User01					PROOF
					PRIVATE
					INVALID
RETURN		ADMIN. PASSWORD	J	:	1/1

#### Note

When you perform the operation as an administrator, do not press the user name but press the [ADMIN. PASSWORD] button. The letter entry menu ( P.44 "Setting letters") appears and you can enter the Admin Password (6 to 10 digits). In this case, jobs can be deleted but not printed. (If an incorrect Admin Password is entered three times in a row, this equipment will not be able to be operated for approx. 30 sec. In that case, wait until it becomes available and then enter the correct Admin Password again.)

# 4 Press the [PASSWORD] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	
PRIVATE PRINT	JOB				PRINT
		User Name			PROOF
User01					
					PRIVATE
					INVALID
RETURN		PASSWORD	]	1	1/1

The private print job list is displayed.

 The letter entry menu ( P.44 "Setting letters") is displayed. Key in the password, which has previously been set from the client PC, and then press the [ENTER] button.

#### Tip

A list of private print jobs for which the same password has been set appears.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		STATUS			
PRIVATE PRINT JOB								
	Document Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	PROOF	
Project-01.1	txt		21,18:15	A4	1	1	PROOF	
Project-03.1	txt		21,18:22	A4	1	1	PRIVATE	
							INVALID	
RETURN		EAR SELECT ALL	EDIT	RELE	ASE	1/1		

#### Printing private print jobs

Select the job you want to print on the private print job list.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	]
PRIVATE PRINT	JOB				PRINT
Project-01.1	txt		21,18:15	A4 1	1 PROOI
	ur 1 u				
RETURN	ELETE ALL CL	EAR SELECT ALL	EDIT	RELEASE	1/1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.
- To select all jobs on the private print job list, press the [SELECT ALL] button. To clear the selection, press the [ALL CLEAR] button.

# **2** Press the [RELEASE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		STATUS	;	
PRIVATE PRINT	JOB						PRINT
	Document Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Project-01.1	ixt		21,18:15	A4	1	1	PROOF
Project-03.1	ixt		21,18:22	A4	1	1	PRIVATE
							INVALID
RETURN	ELETE	EAR SELECT ALL	EDIT	RELE	ASE	1/1	

Printing starts.

• The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

#### Deleting private print jobs

**1** Select the job you want to delete on the private print job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	]
PRIVATE PRINT			21,18:15	A4 1	PRINT PROOF
		EAR SELECT ALL	EDIT	RELEASE	1/1

- If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.
- To select all jobs on the private print job list, press the [SELECT ALL] button. To clear the selection, press the [ALL CLEAR] button.

#### **2** "Delete OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.

Delete OK?	CANCEL	

The job is deleted.

#### When using department codes

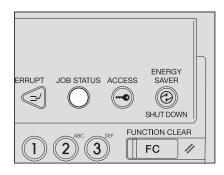
If the department code keyed in at printing is not correct, this job will be stored in the invalid queue (= the list of jobs with an incorrect department code or with no department code), and will not be printed out. However, the jobs stored in the invalid queue can be printed when the correct department code is newly keyed in.

A print job, whose number of pages exceeds that specified for a particular department code, will not be printed out either. In this case, contact the administrator in your office.

### **Displaying invalid queues**

**1** Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.

The print job list is displayed.



#### **2** Press the [INVALID] button.

	1	Α4			P P	RINTING	
PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L	.0G	S	TATUS	
PRINT JOB							PRINT
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	DROOF
User01		28,18:16	A4	1	1	Printing	PROOF
User02		28,18:41	A4	2	2	Wait	DDIVATE
User03		28,18:42	A4	1	2	Wait	
User04		28,18:46	A4	2	1	Wait	
	DELETE PAU	SE MOVE	E	лт (	RELEAS	SE 1/3	Next

The menu for the invalid queue is displayed.

#### Keying in correct department code to print

When an incorrect department code has been keyed in at printing, you can key in the correct department code again to print the subject job.

#### **1** Select the job you want to print on the menu for the invalid queue.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	
NVALID DEPART	IMENT CODE PRINT	JOB			PRINT
100			20 10.42	A4 1	2 PROOF
lser03			28,18:42	84 1	

If the corresponding is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

#### **2** Press the [RELEASE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		STATUS	;	
INVALID DEPART	MENT CODE PRINT	, JOB					PRINT
	User Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User03			28,18:42	A4	1	2	PROOF
							PRIVATE
							INVALID
RETURN	ELETE	SE MOVE	EDIT	RELE	ASE	1/1	

**3** Key in the correct department code, and then press the [ENTER] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS
DEPARTMENT COL (5-digit)	DE 🕨 Enter depar	tment code		
	<b>~~~</b>	Dep	artment Code :	****
				ENTER

Printing starts.

• The printing status can be confirmed on the print job list.

### **Deleting invalid print jobs**

1 Select the job you want to delete on the menu for the invalid queue, then press the [DELETE] button.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS		
INVALID DEPART	MENT CODE PRINT	'JOB				PRINT
User03			28,18:42	A4 1	2	PROOF
						INVALID
	ELETE	SE MOVE	EDIT	RELEASE	1/1	

If the corresponding job is not displayed on the page, press the [Prev] or [Next] button to switch the page.

# **2** "Delete OK?" appears. Press the [DELETE] button.



The job is deleted.

### **Confirming Scan Job Status**

You can confirm the scan job status and delete a scan job. For details, refer to the Scanning Guide.

Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel. Then press the [SCAN] button on the touch panel to display the scan job list.

PRINT FAX SCAN JOB	SCAN LOG	STATUS	
To Project-01.txt	Agent Store to e-Filing	Date,Time Pages 31,05:29 1	
RETURN DELETE			

The following information is displayed.

To:	Name of the file created or the E-mail address of the recipient
Agent:	Function selected for the scan job
Date, Time:	Date and time of the scan job
Pages:	Number of pages scanned or sent via E-mail
Status:	Status of jobs

#### Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 250 pages (1000 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

#### **Deleting scan job**

Select the job you want to delete on the scan job list, and then press the [DELETE] button.

You can confirm the history of each copy, print, scan, and, sending and receiving of Fax, Internet Fax and E-mail job on the log list.

You can also register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses into the address book from the log list of the Fax and Internet Fax, or the log list of scan jobs.

#### Tip

The FAX Unit (optional) is necessary for the Fax function.

When you press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel and the [LOG] button on the touch panel, the log menu is displayed.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS	
RETURN	PRINT	SEND REC	EIVE SCA		

### Confirming job history in log list

#### **Print log**

When you press the [PRINT] button on the log menu, the history of copy jobs and print jobs is displayed.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG		STAT	rus		
PRINT LOG								
	User Na	ame		Dati	e,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User03				23,	27:13	A4	1	
COPY:				21,	23:17	A4	1	
COPY:				21,	23:00	A4	7	
User12				07,	02:58	A4	1	1
RETURN						2	/8 Nex	t Pro

The following information is displayed.

User Name:	Name of the senders of the copy/print job
Date, Time:	Date and time the job was printed
Paper:	Paper size printed
Pages:	Number of pages of the copy/print job
Sets:	Number of sets printed

#### Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following button is displayed.

[RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

### Send log

When you press the [SEND] button on the log menu, the sending history of Fax jobs and Internet Fax jobs is displayed. (The Fax function is optional.)

PRIN	п	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATU	IS		
SEND LOG								
File No.			То		Date,Time	Pages	Status	
014	User1	2			17,09:52	1	OK	
013	User0	2			15,12:27	0	3C12	
011	055-0	00-000		11,18:10	0	OK		
009	User1	1		10,18:07	0	OK		
RETURN JOURNAL ENTRY 1/1								

The following information is displayed.

File No.:	Order of job registered
To:	Recipient's Fax number or E-mail address of Internet Fax
Date, Time:	Date and time the Fax or Internet Fax was sent
Pages:	Number of pages of the Fax or Internet Fax sent
Status:	Result is displayed as "OK" or in error codes.
	(For the error codes, see 📖 P.290 "Error Code".)

#### Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following buttons are displayed.

- [JOURNAL]: Press this button to print the history of sent jobs (= journal). (For details, see P.286 "Printing journals (send/receive log list)".)
- [ENTRY]: Press this button to register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses on the send log list into the address book. (For details, see P.284 "Registering into address book from log lists".)
- [RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

#### **Receive log**

When you press the [RECEIVE] button on the log menu, the receiving history of Fax jobs, Internet Fax jobs and E-mail jobs is displayed. (The Fax function is optional.)

PRIN	п	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATU	IS		
RECEIVE LOG								
File No.			From		Date,Time	Pages	Status	
014	ABC C	orp.			21,21:19	1	OK	
013	055-0	00-000		21,21:11	1	OK		
011	011 T.J.Jr					1	OK	
009 abc@abcabc.com					21,20:08	7	OK	
RETURN JOURNAL ENTRY 1/1								

The following information is displayed.

File No.:	Order of job registered
From:	Sender's Fax number or E-mail address of Internet Fax
	(The recipient's name in the address book is displayed, if registered.)
Date,	Date and time the Fax, Internet Fax or E-mail was received
Time:	
Pages:	Number of pages of the Fax, Internet Fax or E-mail received
Status:	Result is displayed as "OK" or in error codes.
	(For the error codes, see 📖 P.290 "Error Code".)

#### Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following buttons are displayed.

[JOURNAL]: Press this button to print the history of received jobs (= journal). (For details, see P.286 "Printing journals (send/receive log list)".)
 [ENTRY]: Press this button to register unregistered Fax numbers or E-mail addresses on the receive log list into the address book. (For details, see P.284 "Registering into address book from log lists".)
 [RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.

#### Scan log

When you press the [SCAN] button on the log menu, the histories of the following items are displayed.

- Job history of the following functions using the copying functions:
  - Storing job in e-filing
  - Storing job in a shared folder
- Job history of the following functions using the scanning functions:
  - Storing job in e-filing
  - Storing job in a shared folder
  - Sending E-mails
- Job history of the following function using the printing functions:
  - Storing job in e-filing
- Job history of the following function using the e-Filing functions:
- Sending E-mails
- Job history of the following function using the Fax functions:
  - Storing job in a shared folder
- Job history of the following functions using the "Received Fax Forward" function:
  - Storing job in e-filing
  - Storing job in a shared folder
  - Sending E-mails
- Job history of the following functions using the "Received Internet Fax Forward" function:
  - Storing job in e-filing
  - Storing job in a shared folder
  - Sending E-mails

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATU	IS			
SCAN LOG	SCAN LOG							
To	1	Agent		Date,Time	Pages	Status		
Project-01		Store to e-Fili	ng	21,20:04	1	OK		
HAKKODA-002		Store to e-Fili	ng	21,15:20	1	OK		
TANIGAWA		Store to e-Fili	ng	21,15:19	1	OK		
HAKKODA-001		Store to e-Fili	ng	21,15:14	1	OK		
RETURN	E	NTRY			2/3	Next Prev		

The following information is displayed.

To:	Name of the file created or the E-mail address of the recipient
Agent:	Function selected for the scan job
Date, Time:	Date and time of the scan job
Pages:	Number of pages scanned or sent via E-mail
Status:	Result is displayed as "OK" or in error codes.
	(For the error codes, see 💷 P.290 "Error Code".)

#### Tip

4 jobs are displayed in 1 page. Up to 30 pages (120 jobs) can be displayed. When you want to confirm the 5th and the following jobs, press the [Next] button, and when you want to return to the previous page, press the [Prev] button.

The following buttons are displayed.

- [ENTRY]: Press this button to register unregistered E-mail addresses on the scan log list into the address book. (For details, see P.284 "Registering into address book from log lists".)
   [RETURN]: Press this button to return to the log menu.
  - Log List 283

### Registering into address book from log lists

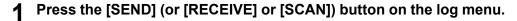
You can register the information such as the remote Fax numbers and E-mail addresses in the address book from the send/receive log screen.

The following information can be registered from the Send log:

- Remote FAX number which was dialed by direct entry using the digital keys, or which was searched for by the LDAP server
- · E-mail address which was manually entered, or which was searched for by the LDAP server

The following information can be registered from the Receive log:

- Remote FAX number which was dialed by direct entry using the digital keys, or which was searched for by the LDAP server for a Polling Reception
- · E-mail address of the sender



PRINT	FAX	SCA	N J LI	06 <u>s</u>	TATUS	
	PRINT	SEND		OK SCAN		
RETURN						

The send (or receive or scan) log list is displayed.

2 Select the job which includes the Fax number or E-mail address you want to register into the address book.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN	L06	STATU	IS		
SEND LOG							
File No.		То		Date,Time	Pages	Status	
014 User1	.2		17,09:52	1	OK		
011 055-000-000 11,18:10 0 OK							
RETURN JOURNAL ENTRY 1/1							

### **3** Press the [ENTRY] button.

PRIN	п	FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATU	IS	
SEND LOO	3						
File No.			To		Date,Time	Pages	Status
014	User1	2			17,09:52	1	OK
013	UserØ	2			15,12:27	0	3C12
011	055-0	00-000			11,18:10	0	OK
009	User1	1			10,18:07	0	OK
RETUR	N JI		RY			1/1	

**L** Enter the following information. (You need to enter at least either of [FIRST NAME] or [LAST NAME], and either of [FAX NO.] or [E-MAIL].)

ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN		
LAST NAME JSE	er01		CORP.		
		OPTION	CANCEL	ENTER	

- FIRST NAME: Enter the first name. The entered first name is displayed in the address book list on the touch panel.
- LAST NAME: Enter the last name. The entered last name is displayed in the address book list on the touch panel.
- FAX NO.: Enter the Fax number.
- 2ND FAX: Enter the second Fax number.
- E-MAIL: Enter the E-mail address.
- CORP.: Enter the company name.
- DEPT.: Enter the department name.
- KEYWORD: Enter a keyword with which you can search for the desired contact.

#### Tip

When you press any of the above, the letter entry menu ( P.44 "Setting letters") is displayed. Enter the information with the buttons on this menu and the digital keys on the control panel.



# **5** Press the [ENTER] button.

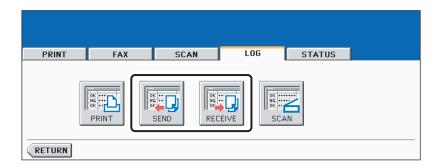
- The information has been registered in the address book.
- For details of the address book, see the User Functions Guide.

#### Printing journals (send/receive log list)

You can print the send and receive log lists of the Fax job. The 40 latest send-and-receive logs (1 page), or the 120 latest send-and-receive logs (3 pages) can be printed out. You can also select and print only 1 log.

For details, see the Operator's Manual for Facsimile Function.

#### **1** Press the [SEND] (or [RECEIVE]) button on the log menu.



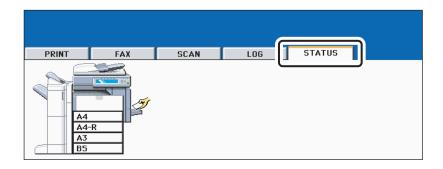
The send (receive) log list is displayed.

### **2** Press the [JOURNAL] button.

PRINT		FAX	SCAN	LOG	STATUS		
RECEIVE LOG							
File No.	From				Date,Time	Pages	Status
014	ABC Corp.				21,21:19	1	OK
013	055-000-000				21,21:11	1	OK
011	T.J.Jr				21,21:08	1	OK
009	009 abc@abcabc.com				21,20:08	7	OK
RETUR		DURNAL		1/1			

The send (receive) log list is printed.

When you press the [STATUS] button on the touch panel while no operation is in progress, the size of the paper set in the drawer is displayed. When you press the [STATUS] button during printing, the drawer button being used for the feeding of this printing is highlighted.



## **Releasing print job errors**

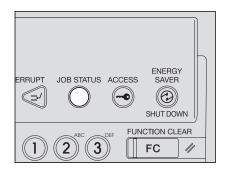
If the specified size of paper is not in the drawer when printing is to be performed from a client PC, a print job error occurs. The [JOB STATUS] button blinks and the following menu is displayed.

100 % 1 AF READY Press JOB STATUS button	25				
	LUII	E-FILING/FIL	E SET	TINGS	
	FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	ATI . TI	. → COPY APS 1 → 1 IMPLEX		NON-SOBT NON-STAPLE
A3 B5			a i i i i	▼ \UTO	PROOF COPY

Follow the procedure below to release the error.

Printing by placing sheets of paper on the bypass tray

1 Press the blinking [JOB STATUS] button.

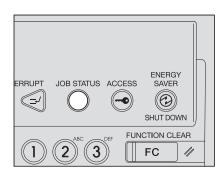


**2** Place the specified size of paper on the bypass tray, and then press the [START] button.

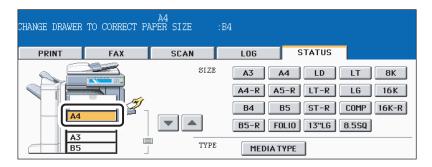
Printing is performed. Press the [JOB STATUS] button when printing is completed.

Printing by placing appropriate size of sheets in the drawer

1 Press the blinking [JOB STA-TUS] button.

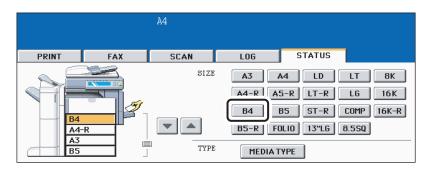


**2** Press the drawer button whose size you want to change on the touch panel.



You can select the desired drawer with the paper source selection (I/I) buttons.

- **3** Place paper in the corresponding drawer.
- **4** Press the paper size button corresponding to the one you have placed.



#### **5** Press the [START] button.

Printing is performed. Press the [JOB STATUS] button when printing is completed.

#### Printing by selecting a paper size already placed in another drawer

When the specified size of paper is not in the drawer, you can release the error by selecting another size of paper already placed in another drawer, instead of placing the specified size of paper in the drawer. However, a part of the image may not be printed if the size of the paper placed in the drawer is smaller than the specified one.

Press the drawer button whose size you want to use on the touch panel. Then press the [START] button.

## **Error Code**

If an error occurs while using the printer, optional Fax, optional Internet Fax or optional scan, the error code is displayed in the status of each log. Take an appropriate action with reference to the following.

Error code	Problem	What to do
Fax	J	1
0012	Original jam	Clear the jammed original.
0013	Door open	Firmly close the open door.
0020	Power interruption	Check the power interruption report.
0030	Reset	Transmission is cancelled. (The transmission is terminated by the jammed printing paper during the Direct Transmission.)
0033	Polling error	Check polling options setup (Security code, etc.), and check if the polling document exists.
0042	Memory full	Make sure that there is sufficient memory before making the cal again.
0050	Line busy	Retry communications.
0053	Security mismatch in relay or mailbox trans- mission	Confirm the remote party's security code, system password, and your setup.
00B0 - 00B5	Signal error or line	Retry communications. Frequent failures may indicate a phone
00C0 - 00C4	condition error	line problem. If possible, move the unit to another line and try
00D0 - 00D2 00F0, 00F1		your communications again.
00E8	HDD error	Retry communications.
Internet Fax		
1C10	System access abnor- mality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C11	Insufficient memory	When there are running jobs, perform the job in error again after the completion of the running jobs. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
1C12	Message reception error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
1C13	Message transmis- sion error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
1C14	Invalid parameter	When a template is used, form the template again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job again.
1C15	Exceeding file capac- ity	Ask your administrator to change the "Fragment Page Size" set ting for the Internet Fax setting, or reduce the number of pages and perform the job again.
1C20	System management module access abnor- mality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the recovery is still not com- pleted, contact your service representative.
1C21-1C22	Job control module access abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the recovery is still not com- pleted, contact your service representative.
1C30	Directory creation fail- ure	Check if the access privilege to the storage directory is writable. Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.
1C31	File creation failure	Check if the access privilege to the storage directory is writable. Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.
1C32	File deletion failure	Check if the access privilege to the storage directory is writable. Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.

#### Fax / Internet Fax

Error code	Problem	What to do
1C33	File access failure	Check if the access privilege to the storage directory is writable.
		Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.
1C40	Image conversion abnormality	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C60	HDD full failure during processing	Reduce the number of pages of the job in error and perform the job again. Check if the server or local disc has a sufficient space in disc capacity.
1C61	Address book reading failure	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. Reset the data in the Address book and perform the job again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C62	Memory acquiring fail- ure	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C63	Terminal IP address unset	Ask your administrator to set the IP address of the equipment.
1C64	Terminal mail address unset	Ask your administrator to set the E-mail address of the equip- ment.
1C65	SMTP address unset	Ask your administrator to set the SMTP server address.
1C66	Server time time out error	Check if the SMTP server is operating properly.
1C69	SMTP server connec- tion error	Ask your administrator to set the login name or password of SMTP server and perform the job again. Check if the SMTP server is operating properly.
1C6A	HOST NAME error	Ask your administrator to check if there is an illegal character in the device name. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate device name.
1C6B	Terminal mail address error	Ask your administrator to check if there is an illegal character in the E-mail address of the equipment. Delete the illegal charac- ter and reset the appropriate E-mail address, then perform the job again.
1C6C	Destination mail address error	Check if there is an illegal character in the Destination E-mail address. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate Destination E-mail address, then perform the job again.
1C6D	System error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
1C70	SMTP client OFF	Ask your administrator to enable the SMTP Client and perform the job again.
1C71	SMTP authentication error	Check if the SMTP authentication method, login name and password are correct. If the SSL setting is enabled, check if the setting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the server.
1C72	POP Before SMTP error	Check if the settings of POP Before SMTP and POP3 are correct.
1C80	Internet Fax transmis- sion failure when pro- cessing E-mail job received	Confirm the "Received Internet Fax Forward" settings.
1C81	Onramp Gateway transmission failure	Confirm the mailbox settings.
1C82	Internet Fax transmis- sion failure when pro- cessing Fax job received	Confirm the "Received Fax Forward" setting.
1CC0	Job cancelling	Job was cancelled.

Error code	Problem	What to do
1CC1	Power failure	Check if the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted
		securely. Check if the power voltage is unstable.
3A10-3A12	MIME format error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail in the MIME1.0 format.
3A20-3A22	E-mail process error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3A30	Partial E-mail timeout	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail, or change the Partial Wait
	error	time setting.
3A40	Invalid partial E-mail	Ask the sender to resend the partial E-mail in the RFC2046 for-
	received	mat.
3A50-3A52	HDD full error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail by separating it to several
		E-mails. If this error occurs because the paper empty occurs
		and too much waiting jobs are stored in the hard disc, add the
3A60-3A62	HDD full alert	paper to activate other jobs.
3A00-3A02		Ask the sender to resend the E-mail by separating it to several E-mails. If this error occurs because the paper empty occurs
		and too much waiting jobs are stored in the hard disc, add the
		paper to activate other jobs.
3A70	Interrupt partial E-mail	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail set-
0, 11 0	reception	ting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3A80-3A82	Partial E-mail disabled	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail set-
		ting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3B10-3B12	E-mail format error	Ask your administrator to enable the Enable Partial E-mail set-
		ting and ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3B20-3B22	Context-type error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached files that are
		the TIFF format.
3B30-3B32	Invalid character set	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail in the ISO-8559-1/2 format.
3B40-3B42	E-mail decode error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail.
3C10-3C13	TIFF analysis error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached files that are
		the TIFF format.
3C20-3C22	TIFF compression	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files in
	error	the MH, MR, MMR, or JPEG compression.
3C30-3C32	TIFF resolution error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files
		whose resolution is either 200 x 100, 200 x 200, 200 x 400, 300 x 300, or 400 x 400 dpi.
3C40-3C42	TIFF paper size error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail with attached TIFF files that
3040-3042		can be printed on the paper available for this equipment.
3C50-3C52	Offramp transmission	Ask the sender to specify the correct fax numbers and resend
0000 0002	error	the E-mail.
3C60-3C62	Offramp security error	Confirm the fax numbers that are specified in the received
		offramp gateway job and ask the sender to resend the E-mail
		with correct fax numbers.
3C70	Power failure	Confirm the job is recovered or not. If not, ask the sender to
		resend the E-mail.
3D10	Destination address	Ask your administrator whether the DNS and mail server set-
	error	tings are correctly set. If they are correctly set, ask the sender to
		confirm the destination address is correct.
3D20	Exceeding maximum	Ask the sender to specify up to 40 destinations for one offramp
	offramp destinations	gateway job. The equipment cannot perform the offramp gate-
2020	Fox unit in not	way transmission for more than 40 destinations.
3D30	Fax unit is not installed	Make sure the Fax unit is installed, or connected correctly.
3E10	POP3 server commu-	Ask your administrator that the POP3 server address is cor-
JEIU	nication error	rectly set, or the POP3 server works properly. Check if the set-
		ting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the
		server.
3E20	POP3 server commu-	Ask your administrator that the POP3 server works properly and
	nication timeout	the LAN cable is connected to the server.

Error code	Problem	What to do
3E30	POP3 login error	Ask your administrator that the POP3 user name and password is set correctly.
3E40	POP3 login type error	Ask your administrator if the login types (Auto, POP3, APOP) to the POP3 server are correct.
3F00, 3F10, 3F20, 3F30, 3F40	File I/O error	Ask the sender to resend the E-mail. If the error still occurs, con- tact your service representative.

Scan	Job

Error code	Problem	What to do
Remote Scan		
2A20	Failed to acquire resource	Perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
2A40	System fatal error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Perform the job in error again.
2A50	Job cancelling	Job was cancelled.
2A51	Power failure	Check if the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Check if the power voltage is unstable.
Scan to E-ma	il	
2C10, 2C12, 2C13, 2C20- 2C22	Illegal job status	A system error has occurred during sending an E-mail. Retry it. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C11, 2C62	Not enough memory	Scan job exceeded the limit or maximum size. Send your documents separately.
2C14	Invalid parameter specified	Make sure you specify the settings correctly and try again.
2C15	Message size exceeded limit or max- imum size	Fragment the message into several smaller-sized ones and send them again.
2C30	Failed to create direc- tory	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server or local disc has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2C31, 2C33	Failed to create file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server or local disc has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2C32	Failed to delete file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server or local disc has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2C40	Failed to convert image file format	When this error occurs at the slim PDF setting, retry the scan. If the error still occurs, retry it with the normal PDF setting. When this error occurs other than at the slim PDF setting, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C61	Failed to read Address book	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the job in error. Reset the data in the Address book and retry it. If the error still occurs, contact your service representa- tive.
2C63, 2C64	Invalid domain address	Ask your administrator to set the IP address.
2C65, 2C66, 2C69	Failed to connect to SMTP server	Make sure the SMTP server is correctly working, or the SMTP server address has been set correctly. Then retry the scan.
2C6A	Failed to send E-mail message	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2C6B	Invalid address speci- fied in From: field	Ask your administrator to check if there is an illegal character in the E-mail address of the equipment. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate E-mail address, then perform the job again.
2C6C	Invalid address speci- fied in To: field	Check if there is an illegal character in the Destination E-mail address. Delete the illegal character and reset the appropriate Destination E-mail address, then perform the job again.
2C6D	NIC system error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the job in error. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2C70	SMTP service is not available	Ask your administrator to enable the SMTP setting.
2C71	SMTP authentication error	Check if the SMTP authentication method, login name and password are correct. Check if the setting and the port number of SSL correspond to those of the server.
2C72	POP Before SMTP error	Check if the settings of POP Before SMTP and POP3 are correct.
2C80	Failed to process received E-mail job	Ask your administrator to confirm whether the Received Internet Fax Forward is set.
2C81	Failed to process received Fax job	Ask your administrator to confirm whether the Received Fax Forward is set.
2CC0	Job cancelled	Job was cancelled.
2CC1	Power failure occurred	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Resend the job.
Save as File		
2D10, 2D12, 2D13, 2D20- 2D22	Illegal job status	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry sending. If the error still occurs, contact your service rep- resentative.
2D11	Not enough memory	Make sure there are enough memory to save the scan job.
2D14	Invalid parameter specified	Make sure you specify the settings correctly and try again.
2D15	Exceeding maximum file capacity	Divide the file into several files, or retry in a single-page format.
2D30	Failed to create direc- tory	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server, local disc or USB memory has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2D31, 2D33	Failed to create file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server, local disc or USB memory has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2D32	Failed to delete file	Make sure that the access privilege to the storage directory is writable and the server, local disc or USB memory has a sufficient space. Then retry the scan.
2D40	Failed to convert image file format	When this error occurs at the slim PDF setting, retry the scan. If the error still occurs, retry it with the normal PDF setting. When this error occurs other than at the slim PDF setting, turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D60	Failed to copy file	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2D62	Failed to connect to network destination. Check destination path.	Check destination path. Make sure that the network path is correct, and retry the scan. If the error still occurs, ask your administrator to confirm whether the IP address or path of the server is correct. Also make sure that the server is operating properly.
2D63	Specified network path is invalid. Check destination path.	Make sure you specify correct network folder and retry the scan.
2D64	Logon to file server failed. Check user- name and password.	Make sure you specify correct user name and password to logon the file server and retry the scan.
2D65	There are too many documents in the folder. Failed in creat- ing new document.	Delete the data in the local storage folder in the equipment and retry the scan.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2D66	Failed to process your job. Insufficient stor- age space.	Delete the data in the local storage folder in the equipment and retry the scan.
2D67	FTP service is not available.	Ask your administrator whether the FTP service is configured correctly.
2D68	File sharing service is not available.	Ask your administrator whether the SMB protocol is enabled.
2DA8	The HDD is running out of capacity for the shared folder.	Delete the unnecessary data in HDD.
2DC0	Job cancelled.	Job was cancelled.
2DC1	Power failure occurred.	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely. Resend the job.
Store to e-Fili	ng	l
2B10	There was no applica- ble job.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B11	Job status failed.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B20	Failed to access file	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B21	Message size exceeded limit or maximum size	Fragment the message into several smaller-sized ones and send them again.
2B30	Insufficient disc space	Delete unnecessary documents in e-Filing and try again.
2B31	Failed to access e-Fil- ing	Make sure that the specified e-Filing or folder exists. (If not, this error would not occur.). Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Delete the specified e-Filing or folder and reset them. Retry the job in error. If the specified e-Filing or folder cannot be deleted, contact your service representative.
2B32	Failed to print e-Filing document	Make sure that the specified document exists. (If not, this error would not occur.).Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Delete the specified document. If the specified document cannot be deleted, contact your service representative.
2B50	Failed to process image	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B51	Failed to process print image	Make sure that the Function List can be printed out. Retry the print. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2B90	Insufficient memory	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the scan. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2BA0	Invalid box password specified	Make sure that the password is correct and retry the scan, or reset the password and retry the scan. When this error occurs for the print of the data in the e-Filing, perform the print with the administrator's password. If the recovery is still not completed or in case of invalid password for the operation other than printing (opening the file, etc.), contact your service representative.
2BB0	Job cancelled.	Job was cancelled by the user.
2BB1	Power failure occurred.	Make sure that the power cable is connected properly and it is inserted securely.
2BC0	System fatal error	Turn the power OFF and then back ON. Retry the print. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2BC1	Failed to acquire resource	Ask your administrator if the e-Filing function is enabled. Retry the job in error. If the error still occurs, turn the power OFF and then back ON. And then retry the job in error.

Error code	Problem	What to do
2B60	The folder was renamed. A folder of the same name already existed.	Check the folder to be made.
2B70	The document was renamed. A document of the same name already existed.	Check the data to be stored.
2B71	The storage period of e-Filing documents will expire.	Check the storage period.
2B80	The HDD for storing e-Filing data is running out of space.	Delete the unnecessary data in HDD.
2BA1	Incorrect paper size or colour mode	This size or colour mode is not supported by e-Filing. Check the paper size or colour mode.
2BD0	Power failure occurred during restoring.	Check the power cable.
2BE0	Failed to obtain the machine parameters.	Turn the power OFF and then back ON to print again.
2BF0	Reached the maxi- mum number of pages.	Reduce the pages to be inserted, and print them.
2BF1	Reached the maxi- mum number of docu- ments.	Delete unnecessary documents in the box or folder.
2BF2	Reached the maxi- mum number of fold- ers.	Delete unnecessary folders in the box.
Printer	L	
4031	HDD full for printing	Too many jobs of Private print and department code print are stored in HDD.
4032	Private-print-only error	Jobs other than Private print cannot be printed. Perform Private printing.
4033	Printing data storing limitation error	Printing with its data being stored to the HDD temporarily (Proof print, Private print, Scheduled print, etc.) cannot be performed. Perform normal printing.
4034	e-Filing storing limita- tion error	Printing with its data being stored to the HDD (print and e-Filing, print to e-Filing, etc.) cannot be performed. Perform normal printing.
4035	Local file storing limita- tion error	Network Fax or Internet Fax cannot be sent when "Local" is selected for the destination of the file to save. Select "Remote" (SMB/FTP) for the destination.
4036	User authentication error	The user performing the printing has not been authenticated or user-registered. Perform user authentication or user registra- tion.
4040	No authority to exe- cute a job	Ask your administrator about it.
4050	The connection with the LDAP server or its authority setting has something wrong.	Ask your LDAP server administrator about it.
A221	Print job cancel	Print job is cancelled. Retry the print.

Error code	Problem	What to do
A222	Print Job power inter- ruption	Power failure occurred. Retry the print.
A290	Limit over error (Black and White)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code and user code at the same time. Clear the limit counter.
A291	Limit over error (Black and White)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the user code. Clear the limit counter.
A292	Limit over error (Black and White)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code. Clear the limit counter.
A2A0	Limit over error (Colour)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code and user code at the same time. Clear the limit counter.
A2A1	Limit over error (Colour)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the user code. Clear the limit counter.
A2A2	Limit over error (Colour)	Number of prints has exceeded the one specified with the department code. Clear the limit counter.

#### **RFC** related

Error code	Problem	What to do
2500	Syntax error, com- mand unrecognized: HOST NAME error (RFC: 500), Destina- tion mail address error (RFC: 500), Terminal mail address error (RFC: 500)	Check if the Terminal mail address and Destination mail address are correct. Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again.
2501	Syntax error in param- eters or arguments: HOST NAME error (RFC: 501), Destina- tion mail address error (RFC: 501), Terminal mail address error (RFC: 501)	Check if the Terminal mail address and Destination mail address are correct. Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again.
2503	Destination mail address error (RFC: 503)	Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2504	HOST NAME error (RFC: 504)	Check if the mail server is operating properly. Turn the power OFF and then back ON, and perform the job in error again. If the error still occurs, contact your service representative.
2550	Destination mail address error (RFC: 550)	Check if the Destination mail address is correct. Check the sta- tus of mailbox access restriction, etc. on the mail server.
2551	Destination mail address error (RFC: 551)	Check the Destination mail address. Check if the mail server is operating properly.
2552	Terminal/Destination mail address error (RFC: 552)	Check if the Destination mail address is correct. Check the restriction of the capacity in the mailbox of the mail server.
2553	Terminal/Destination mail address error (RFC: 553)	Check if there is an illegal character in the mailbox in the mail server.

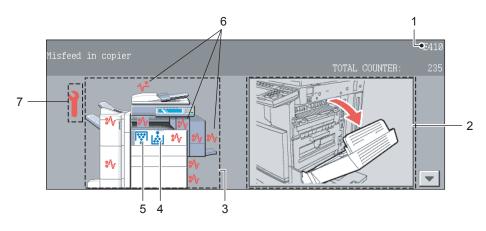
# 9

## **BLINKING GRAPHIC SYMBOLS**

This chapter explains the graphic symbols blinking on the touch panel to notify you of the status of the equipment and the appropriate actions to be taken.

Blinking Graphic Symbols	300
Drawer Display on the Touch Panel	301
Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol	302
Recommendation for original toner	
Replacing the toner cartridge	304
Cleaning the slit glasses	
Cleaning the chargers	308
Replace Toner Bag Symbol	309
Jam Symbols	311
Misfeed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)	311
Misfeed in drawer feeding area	314
Misfeed in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)	315
Misfeed in the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional)	316
Misfeed on the bypass tray	
Misfeed in the automatic duplexing unit	
Misfeed in the jam releasing cover	
Misfeed in the fuser unit	
Misfeed in the Bridge Unit (optional)	
Misfeed in the Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-1101, MJ-6101)	
Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-1030, MJ-6004)	
Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Unit (optional)	330
Call Service Symbol	333

## **Blinking Graphic Symbols**

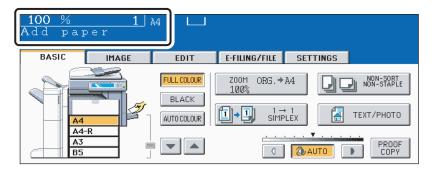


- 1. Error code
- 2. Guidance display area
- 3. Illustration of the equipment
- 4. Replace toner cartridge symbol ( P.302 "Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol")
- 5. Replace toner bag symbol ( P.309 "Replace Toner Bag Symbol")
- 6. Jam symbol ( P.311 "Jam Symbols")
- 7. Call service symbol ( P.333 "Call Service Symbol")

When one of the graphic symbols 4 to 7 blinks, take the appropriate action referring to the indicated pages.

## Drawer Display on the Touch Panel

When the drawer runs out of paper, the drawer display on the touch panel starts blinking. Add paper to the drawer.



## **Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol**

When the toner in the cartridge runs out, the Replace toner cartridge symbol blinks and the following message appears.

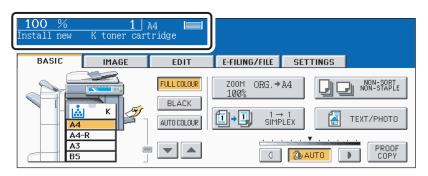
Up to approx. 50 copies can be made after the Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol starts blinking. (The maximum number of copies that can be made varies depending on the copying/printing conditions.)

#### When the black toner runs out:

"Install new K toner cartridge" appears.

#### When the yellow, magenta or cyan toner runs out:

"Install new Y (M or C) toner cartridge" appears.



#### Caution

Never attempt to incinerate toner cartridges. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.

To maintain fine image quality, perform cleaning for the slit glass and chargers following the procedure bellow.

Replacing the toner cartridge

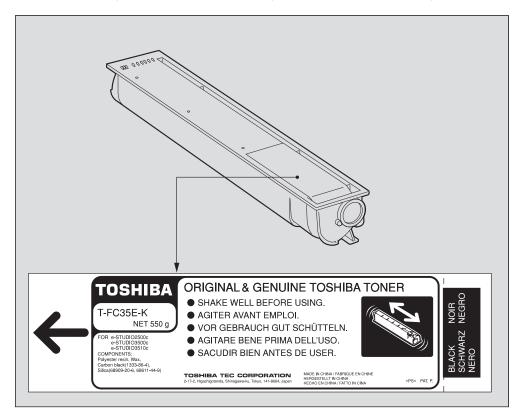
↓ Cleaning the slit glasses

Ļ

Cleaning the chargers

### **Recommendation for original toner**

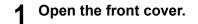
At Toshiba we strive to provide you with the highest quality images. Please use genuine Toshiba toner to ensure that you continue to receive quality output that is environmentally safe.

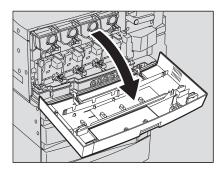


#### Replacing the toner cartridge

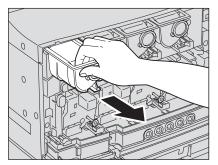
#### Tip

When you want to replace a cartridge before the Replace toner cartridge symbol blinks, see the User Functions Guide.

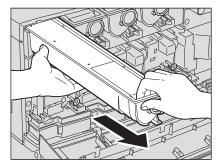




2 Put your fingers in the groove and slowly pull out the colour toner cartridge to be replaced.



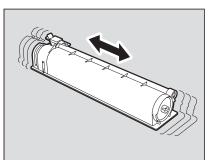
**3** When the cartridge is pulled out more than halfway, pull it straight out while supporting it.



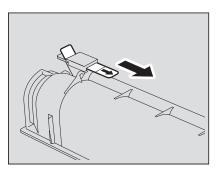
#### Caution

Never attempt to incinerate toner cartridges. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.

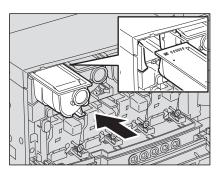
4 Shake the new toner cartridge well to loosen the toner inside.



**5** Pull out the seal in the direction of the arrow.

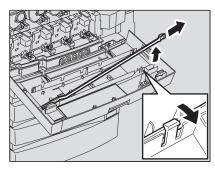


6 Insert the new toner cartridge straight until it stops. Then clean the slit glasses.

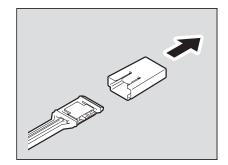


## **Cleaning the slit glasses**

1 The slit glass cleaner is placed inside the front cover. Press and release the latch of the holder to take out the slit glass cleaner.

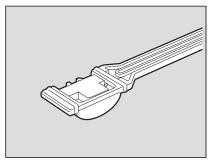


## **2** Remove the cap.

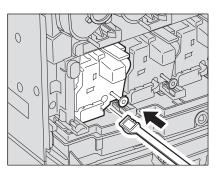


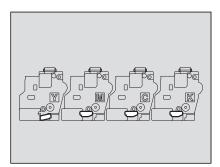
#### Notes

- Do not touch the slit glass cleaner pad, the toner on the pad may stick to your hands and the cleaner pad may become contaminated.
- Use the slit glass cleaner with its pad side facing down.



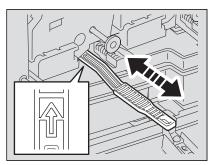
3 Insert the cleaner through the service hole under each developer to clean the slit glass.





4 Insert the cleaner all the way in, and then pull it out. Repeat this two or three times for each colour.

Insert the cleaner all the way in until the arrow mark on the cleaner is hidden.

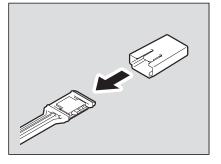


## 5 Install the cap.

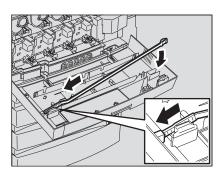


Tip

Do not touch the slit glass cleaner pad, the toner on the pad may stick to your hands and the cleaner pad may become contaminated.

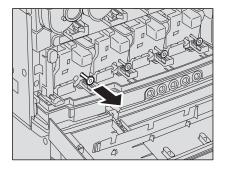


6 Attach the cleaner to the front cover. Check if the cleaner is securely held by the holder.



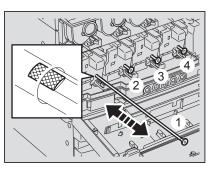
#### **Cleaning the chargers**

Pull out the knob of the charger cleaner for yellow straight until the red mark appears.

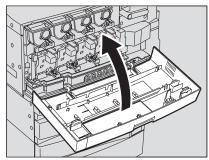


# 2 Insert the charger cleaner straight until it stops.

- Repeat steps 1 and 2 two or three times to clean the chargers.
- Clean all the chargers in the order of yellow, magenta, cyan and black.



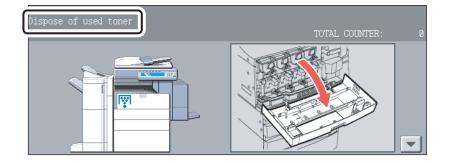
**3** Close the front cover. "Wait adding toner" appears. The equipment automatically starts supplying toner.



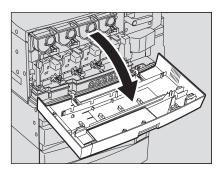
## **Replace Toner Bag Symbol**

When the toner bag becomes full of used toner, the replace toner bag symbol blinks and "Dispose of used toner" appears.

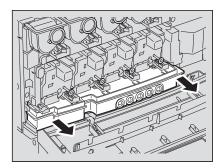
Replace the toner bag following the procedure below.



**1** Open the front cover.



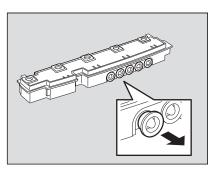
**2** Pull the toner bag out carefully.



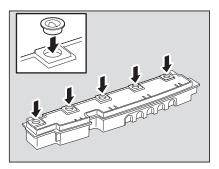
#### Caution

Never attempt to incinerate toner bags. Dispose of used toner cartridges and toner bags in accordance with local regulations.

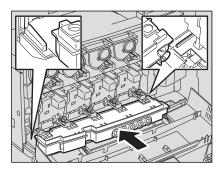
# **3** Remove lids from the side of the toner bag.

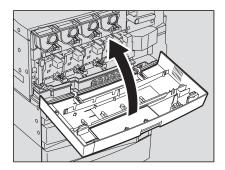


**4** Put the lid on the toner bag.



5 Set a new toner bag.

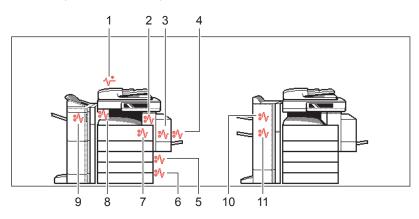




6 Close the front cover.

When a paper misfeed occurs in the equipment, the jam symbol blinks in the positions where the paper is misfed. Follow the guidance on the touch panel to remove the misfed paper properly.

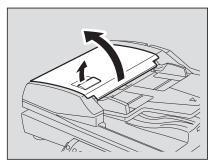
• The misfed paper may not be in the correct position as shown in the illustration depending on the timing of the misfeeding.



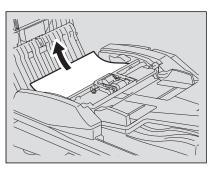
- 1. Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional) (
- 2. Fuser Unit ( P.319)
- 3. Automatic Duplexing Unit (P.317)
- 4. Bypass tray ( P.316)
- 5. Drawer feeding area ( P.314)
- 6. Large Capacity Feeder or Paper Feed Pedestal (both optional) ( P.315)
- 7. Jam releasing cover ( P.318)
- 8. Bridge Unit (optional) ( P.322)
- 9. Finisher and Hole Punch Unit (both optional: MJ-1101, MJ-6101) ( P.323)
- 10. Finisher and Hole Punch Unit (both optional: MJ-1030, MJ-6004) ( P.328)
- 11. Saddle Stitch Unit of Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) ( P.330)

#### Misfeed in the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder (optional)

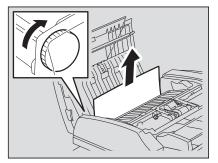
**1** Raise the lever, and then open the upper cover.



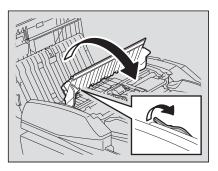
**2** Remove any misfed originals.



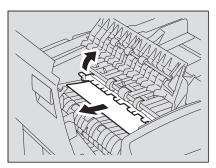
**3** Turn the dial to remove the misfed original.



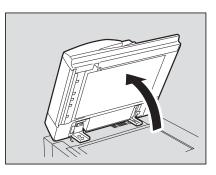
**4** Open the transport guide.



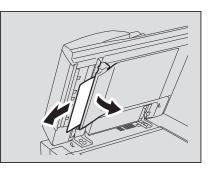
5 Raise the guide plate under the transport guide, and then remove the original under the guide plate.



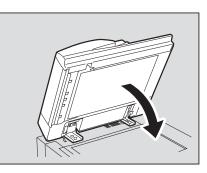
- 6 Close the transport guide, and then the upper cover.
- 7 Open the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.



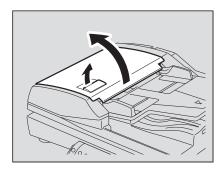
8 Open the reverse cover, and then remove the original.



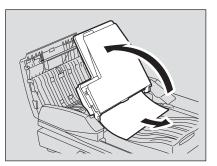
**9** Close the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder.



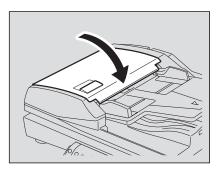
**10** Raise the lever, and then open the upper cover.



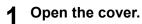
Raise the original feeding tray, 11 and then remove the original under the tray.

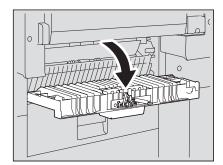


- **12** Lower the original feeding tray.
- **13** Close the upper cover.



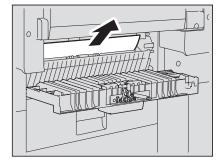
#### Misfeed in drawer feeding area



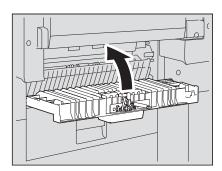




2 Remove any misfed paper.

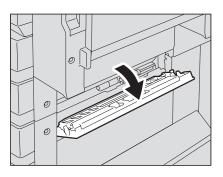


## **3** Close the cover.

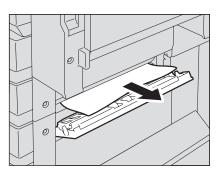


## Misfeed in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional)

**1** Open the cover of the Large Capacity Feeder.



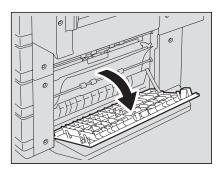
**2** Remove any misfed paper.

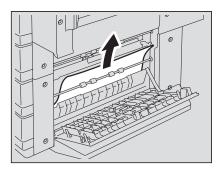


**3** Close the cover.

#### Misfeed in the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional)

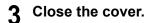
1 Open the cover of the Paper Feed Pedestal remove any misfed paper.





\_

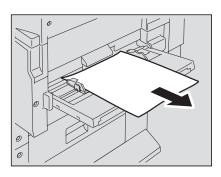
Remove any misfed paper.



#### Misfeed on the bypass tray

2

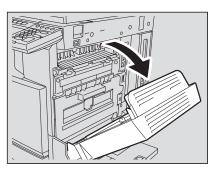
**1** Pull out misfed paper on the bypass tray.



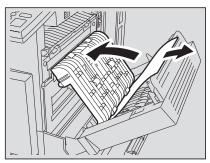
## Misfeed in the automatic duplexing unit

#### Caution

- Be careful not to let your fingers be caught between the equipment and the automatic duplexing unit. This could injure you.
- Do not touch the metal portion of a guide plate as it could burn you.
  - 1 Open the automatic duplexing unit.



2 Lift the paper guide as indicated by the arrow and remove any misfed paper.

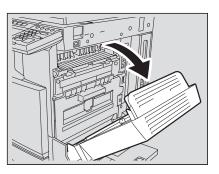


**3** Lower the paper guide and return the automatic duplexing unit to the original position.

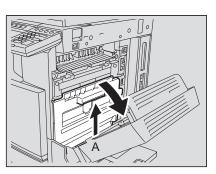
Be sure to close both sides of the automatic duplexing unit firmly.

#### Misfeed in the jam releasing cover

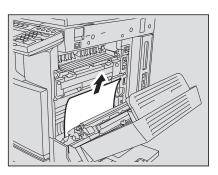
1 Open the automatic duplexing unit.



**2** Put your fingers into A, push it up to release the lock and open the jam releasing cover.



**3** Rotate the green knob as indicated by the arrow toward the inside and remove any misfed paper.



**4** Return the jam releasing cover, the automatic duplexing unit to the original positions.

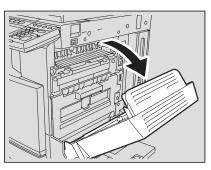
Be sure to close both sides of the jam releasing cover and the automatic duplexing unit firmly.

### Misfeed in the fuser unit

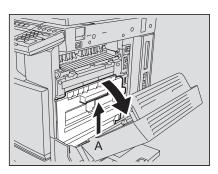
#### Caution

Do not touch the fuser unit or the metal area around it. Since they are very hot, you could be burned or the shock could cause an injury to your hand.

1 Open the Automatic duplexing unit.



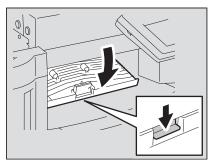
**2** Open the jam releasing cover.



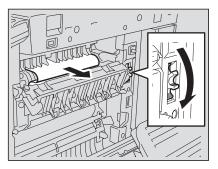
**3** Holding the green knob, open the transport guide. If no misfed paper can be found on the exit side, perform step 8 and subsequent steps in Tip.



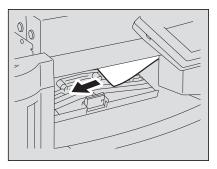
4 Open the cover of the Bridge Unit (optional). When the Finisher (optional) is not installed, skip this step.



5 Rotate the green dial downward as indicated by the arrow to move the paper to the exit side.

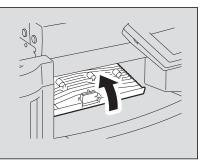


6 Remove any misfed paper from the receiving tray or the Bridge Unit (optional).

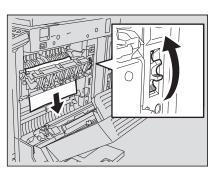


7 Close the cover of the Bridge Unit (optional). Skip this step if the Finisher (optional) is not installed.

If no misfed paper can be found on the exit side, perform step 8.



8 Rotate the green dial upward as indicated by the arrow to move the paper down.



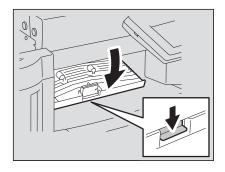
9 Holding the green knob, close the transport guide.



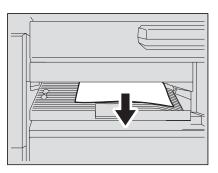
**10** Close the jam releasing cover and the Automatic duplexing unit. Be sure to close both sides of the Automatic duplexing unit.

#### Misfeed in the Bridge Unit (optional)

1 Holding the cover handle of the Bridge Unit, open the cover.

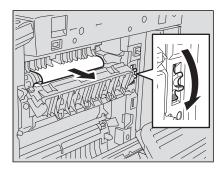


**2** Remove any misfed paper that is inside the Bridge Unit.



Tip

When the misfed paper cannot be removed because the right side of the paper is caught by the fuser unit, follow steps on  $\square$  P.319 "Misfeed in the fuser unit".

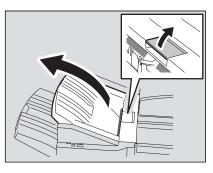


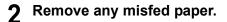


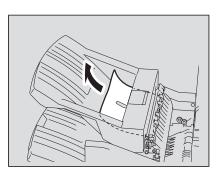
# Misfeed in the Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-1101, MJ-6101)

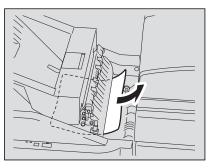
A paper misfeed at the upper tray

1 Raise the lever, and then open the upper tray.



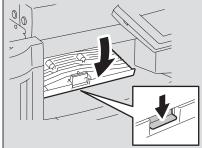






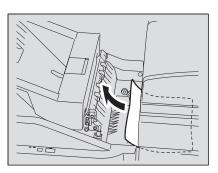
# **3** Holding the cover handle of the Bridge Unit, open the cover.

When the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101) is installed, proceed to step 5.



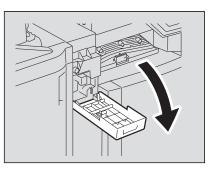


**A** Remove any misfed paper. Proceed to step 8.

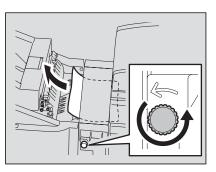


When installing the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101)

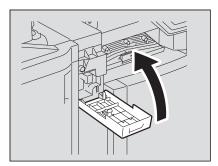
5 Open the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.



6 Turn the knob anticlockwise to remove any misfed paper.



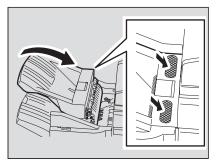
**Close the cover of the Hole** 7 Punch Unit.



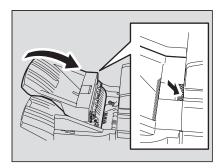
# 8 Close the cover of the Bridge Unit.

# **9** Close the upper tray.

Place both hands at the shaded area of the upper tray, and then push and close the upper tray until it locks.

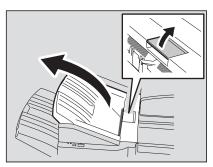


The upper tray can be closed by pressing the right side of the latch.

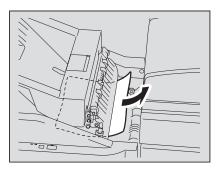


#### A paper misfeed at the lower tray

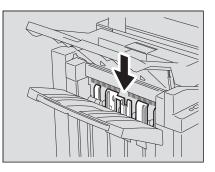
1 Raise the lever, and then open the upper tray.



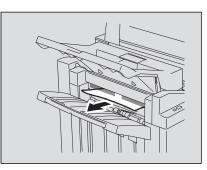
**2** Remove any misfed paper.



#### Lower the shutter of the paper 3 exit.

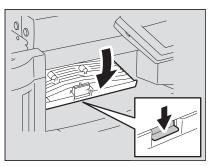


**A** Remove any misfed paper.



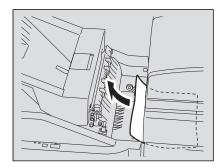
#### 5 Holding the cover handle of the Bridge Unit, open the cover.

When the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101) is installed, proceed to step 7.



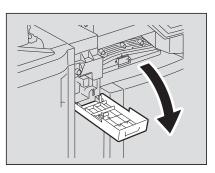


#### 6 Remove any misfed paper. Proceed to step 10.

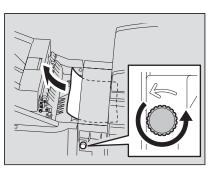


When installing the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101)

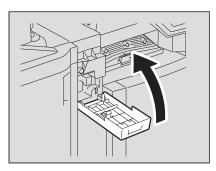
7 Open the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.



8 Turn the knob anticlockwise to remove any misfed paper.



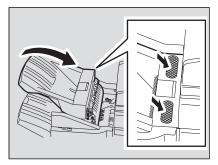
**9** Close the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.



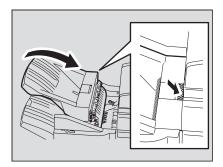
**10** Close the cover of the Bridge Unit.

#### **11** Close the upper tray.

Place both hands at the shaded area of the upper tray, and then push and close the upper tray until it locks.



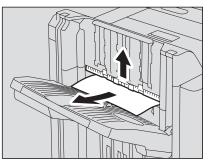
The upper tray can be closed by pressing the right side of the latch.



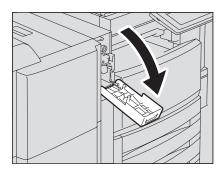
# Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Finisher and the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-1030, MJ-6004)

1 Hold up the guide and remove any misfed paper in the paper exit area.

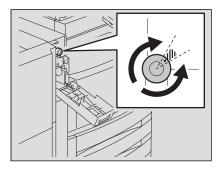
When the Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6004) is installed, proceed to step 2. If not installed, proceed to step 6.



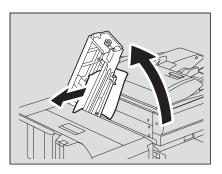
# **2** Open the front cover of the Hole Punch Unit.



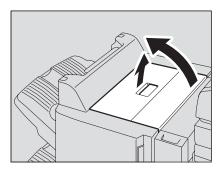
**3** Turn the green knob to locate the triangle mark within the area indicated on the label. Under this condition, the punchers are up.



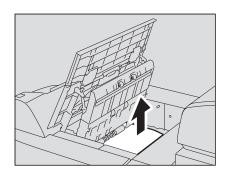
**4** Raise the Hole Punch Unit, and remove any misfed paper.



- 5 Return the Hole Punch Unit to the original position and close the front cover.
- 6 Open the upper cover of the Finisher until it locks.



Remove any misfed paper. 7

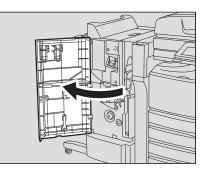




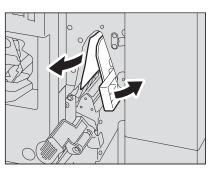
8 Close the upper cover.

## Misfeed in the Saddle Stitch Unit (optional)

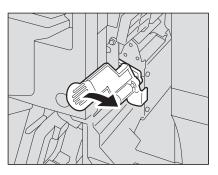
1 Open the front cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.



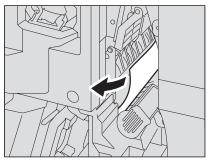
2 Slide the green handle toward the right and remove the mis-fed paper.



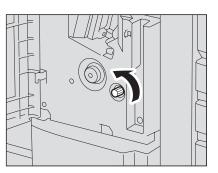
**3** Move the green handle to the right-hand side.



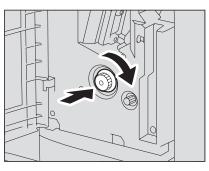
4 Remove any misfed paper and return the handle to its original position.



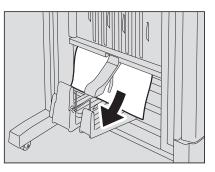
**5** Turn the right-hand knob anticlockwise.



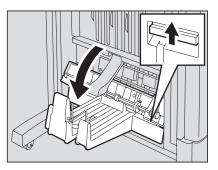
6 Turn the left-hand knob clockwise while you are pushing it.



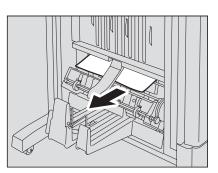
7 Remove any misfed paper on the exit side of the Saddle Stitch Unit.



8 Raise the lever and open the exit cover of the Saddle Stitch Unit.

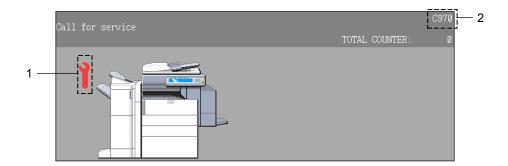


**9** Remove any misfed paper.



**10** Close the exit cover and the front cover.

## **Call Service Symbol**



- 1. Call service symbol
- 2. Error code

#### Warning

Never attempt to repair, disassemble or modify the equipment by yourself. You could cause a fire or get an electric shock.

Always contact your service representative for maintenance or repair of the internal parts of the equipment.

When the call service symbol blinks and "Misfeed in copier Press HELP" appears, output is no longer possible. Contact your service representative with the information of the displayed error code.

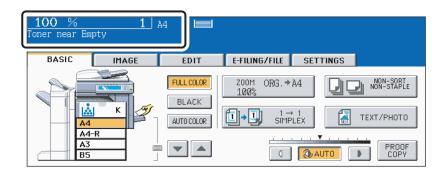
# 10

# WHEN THIS MESSAGE APPEARS

This chapter explains the various messages displayed on the touch panel and the appropriate actions to be taken.

"Toner near Empty"	337
"Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning" Cleaning the slit glass	340
Cleaning the chargers	
"Check staple cartridge"	
Finisher (optional: MJ-1101) Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)	
"Check staple cartridge in the Saddle Stitch Unit"	
"Examine stapler"	
Finisher (optional: MJ-1101)	
Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)	
"READY (CHECK STAPLER)"	354
"Examine stapler in the Saddle Stitch Unit"	355
"READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)"	358
"READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)" Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101, MJ-6004)	
"POWER FAILURE"	360
"Time for periodic maintenance"	361
"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N"	
During copying (using a drawer)	
During copying (using the bypass tray)	
During printing from the FAX or Printer (using a drawer) During printing from the Printer (using the bypass tray)	
"Cannot print this paper size Select the other drawer"	370

"Cannot print this paper type Set the other paper type"	371
"Reboot the machine"	372



This message appears when toner in any of the toner cartridges has become little. Up to approx. 4000 copies can be made after it has appeared. The icon of the colour of the corresponding toner cartridge is lit in the equipment status indication area. Prepare a new cartridge accordingly.

K: Black Y: Yellow M: Magenta C: Cyan

#### Note

There is still a little toner remaining in the toner cartridge while this message is being shown. Replace the toner cartridge with a new one when it has become completely empty.

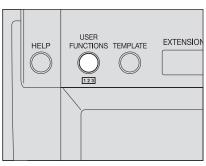
When any of the toner cartridges has become completely empty, "Insert new K toner cartridge" or "Insert Y (M or C) toner cartridge appears, and the icon of the colour of the corresponding toner cartridge blinks.
 P.302 "Replace Toner Cartridge Symbol"

If you have replaced the toner cartridge while "Toner near Empty" is being shown, reset the counter value after the replacement by following the procedure below.

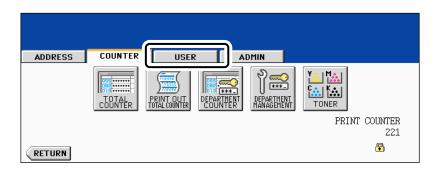
#### Note

If you do not reset the counter value in this step, the next "Toner near Empty" message may not appear at a proper timing.





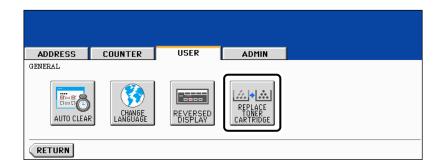
# 2 Press the [USER] button.



**3** Press the [GENERAL] button.

ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN		
	GENERAL	N COPY		P O	LIST
RETURN	DRAWER		ITDOWN		

**4** Press the [REPLACE TONER CARTRIDGE] button.



# **5** Press the button for the colour of the toner cartridge which you have replaced.

Select toner (	cartridge			
ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN	
REPLACE TONER		MAGENTA(M) CYA	N(C) BLACK(K	0
RETURN				FINISH

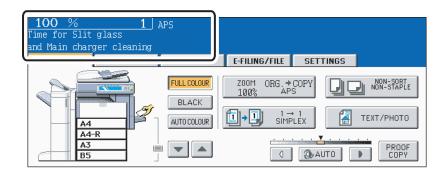
# 6 Press the [FINISH] button.

Press FINISH 1	button				
ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN		
REPLACE TONER	CARTRIDGE				
	YELLOW(Y)	MAGENTA(M)	AN(C) BLACK(K)		
RETURN			F	INISH	

## 7 Press the [YES] button.

ADDRESS COUNTER	USER	ADMIN
Ar	YES	NO

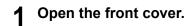
## "Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning"

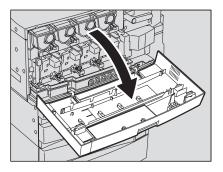


This message appears when the slit glass and the main charger require cleaning. When it appears, follow the steps below to clean the slit glasses and the chargers. Also clean the slit glasses and the chargers when the toner cartridge is replaced with a new one.

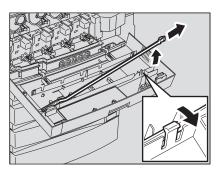
#### Cleaning the slit glass

Toner adhering on the surface of the slit glass will reduce the image quality. Follow the procedure bellow to clean the slit glass.

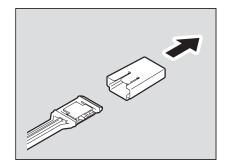




2 The slit glass cleaner is placed inside the front cover. Press and release the latch of the holder to take out the slit glass cleaner.

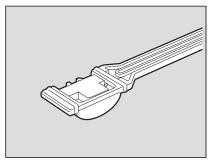


## **3** Remove the cap.

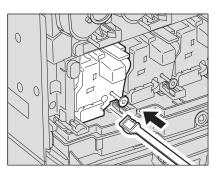


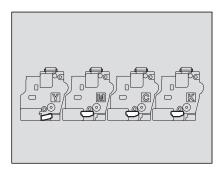
#### Notes

- Do not touch the slit glass cleaner pad, the toner on the pad may stick to your hands and the cleaner pad may become contaminated.
- Use the slit glass cleaner with its pad side facing down.



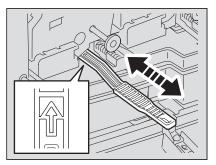
4 Insert the cleaner through the service hole under each developer to clean the slit glass.





5 Insert the cleaner all the way in, and then pull it out. Repeat this two or three times for each colour.

Insert the cleaner all the way in until the arrow mark on the cleaner is hidden.

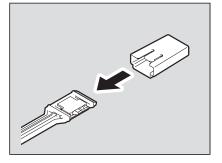


# 6 Install the cap.

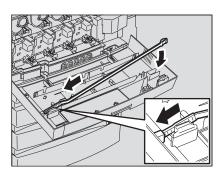


Tip

Do not touch the slit glass cleaner pad, the toner on the pad may stick to your hands and the cleaner pad may become contaminated.

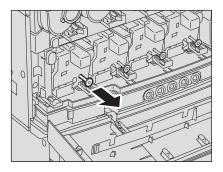


7 Attach the cleaner to the front cover. Check if the cleaner is securely held by the holder.



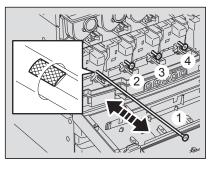
#### **Cleaning the chargers**

1 Pull out the knob of the charger cleaner for yellow straight until the red mark appears.

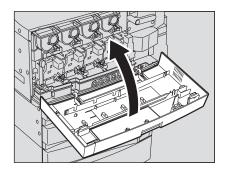


# 2 Insert the charger cleaner straight until it stops.

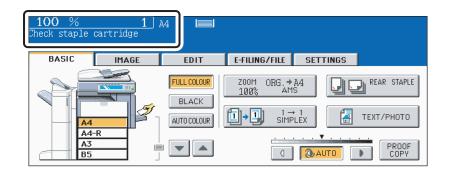
- Repeat steps 1 and 2 two or three times to clean the chargers.
- Clean all the chargers in the order of yellow, magenta, cyan and black.



## **3** Close the front cover.



## "Check staple cartridge"

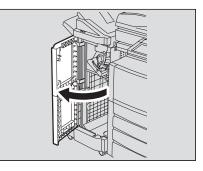


This message will be shown only if the finisher (optional) is installed. When the staples in the stapler of the finisher run out, this message appears.

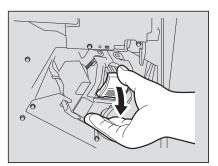
Add staples to the cartridge according to the following procedure.

#### Finisher (optional: MJ-1101)

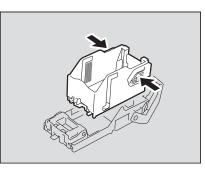
1 Open the front cover of the finisher.



**2** Take off the staple cartridge.

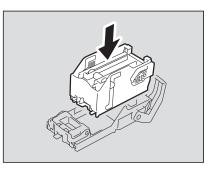


**3** Take the empty staple case out of the staple cartridge.



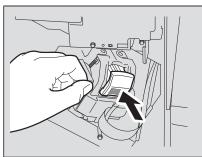
▲ Install a new staple case into the staple cartridge.

Insert the new case into the cartridge until you hear a click sound.



#### 5 Install the staple cartridge onto the stapler.

- When installing the staple cartridge, hold the mint-green colour label portion of the bracket securely so that it will not move.
- Insert the cartridge until it is caught by the latch and fixed with a click sound.





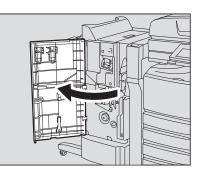
# 6 Close the front cover of finisher.

#### Note

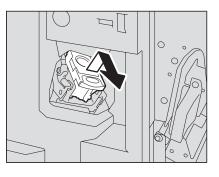
If "Check staple cartridge" remains, repeat the above procedure from steps 1 to 6.

#### Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)

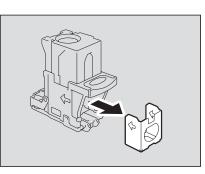
1 Open the front cover of the finisher.



**2** Take off the staple cartridge.

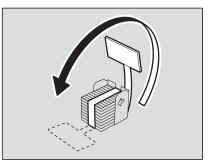


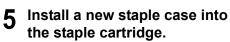
**3** Take the empty staple case out of the staple cartridge.



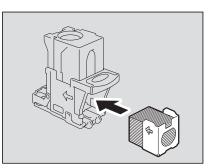
4 Remove the seal bundling the staples.

Be careful that the staples are not misaligned.



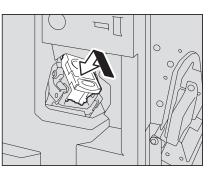


Insert the new case into the cartridge until you hear a click sound.



# 6 Install the staple cartridge onto the stapler.

Insert the cartridge until it is caught by the latch and fixed with a click sound.

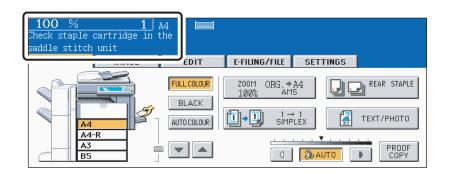


#### 7 Close the front cover of finisher.

#### Note

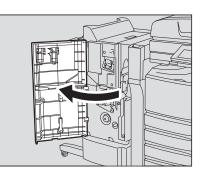
If "Check staple cartridge" remains, repeat the above procedure from steps 1 to 7.

## "Check staple cartridge in the Saddle Stitch Unit"

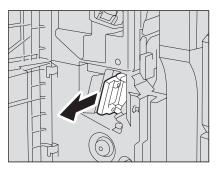


This message will be shown only if the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. When the staples in the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Finisher run out, this message appears. Replace the staple cartridge according to the following procedure.

1 Open the front cover of the finisher.

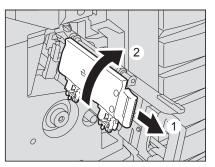


2 Slide the Saddle Stitch Unit carefully toward the front.



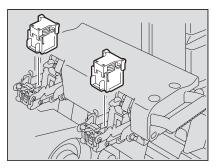
**3** Pull the handle of the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Unit toward you to unlock it. Then turn the stapler clockwise for about 60 degrees.

The stapler will be locked and will not be turned any further when it becomes almost horizontal.

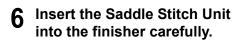


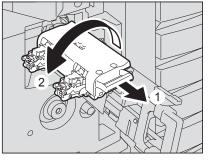
**4** Take off the empty staple cartridge, and then install a new one.

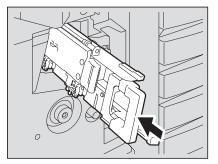
Replace both cartridges at a time.



5 Pull the handle of the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Unit toward you to unlock it. Then lower the stapler to its original position.

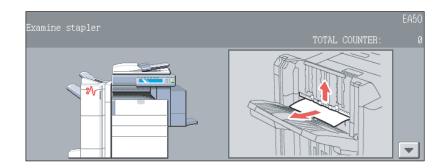






7 Close the front cover of the finisher.

## "Examine stapler"

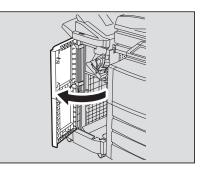


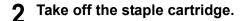
This message appears when the staples in the finisher (optional) are jammed. To remove them, follow the procedure below.

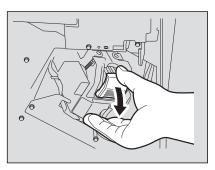
#### Finisher (optional: MJ-1101)



Open the front cover of the finisher.

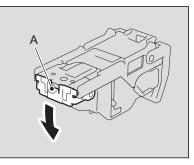






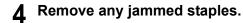
3 Lower the guide while holding the knob.

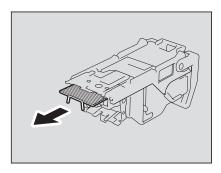
A: Stapling area



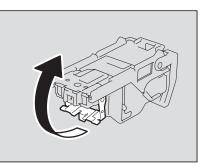
#### Caution

Do not touch the stapling area. The stapler could injure you.



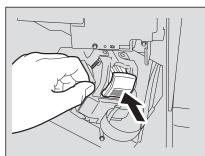


5 Hold the knob and raise the guide, and then return the guide to its original position.



# 6 Install the staple cartridge into the stapler.

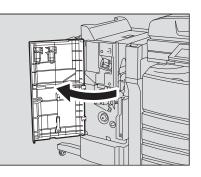
- When installing the staple cartridge, hold the mint-green colour label portion of the bracket securely so that it will not move.
- Insert the cartridge until it is caught by the latch and fixed with a click sound.



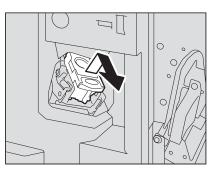
**7** Close the front cover of finisher.

#### Finisher (optional: MJ-1030)

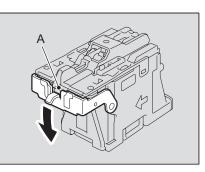
1 Open the front cover of the finisher.



**2** Take off the staple cartridge.

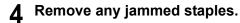


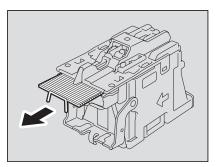
3 Lower the guide while holding the knob. A: Stapling area



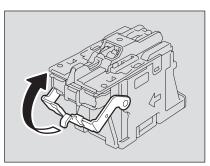
#### Caution

Do not touch the stapling area. The stapler could injure you.



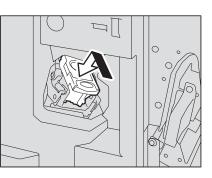


5 Hold the knob and raise the guide, and then return the guide to its original position.



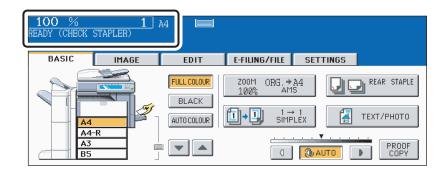
6 Install the staple cartridge into the stapler.

Insert the cartridge until it is caught by the latch and fixed with a click sound.



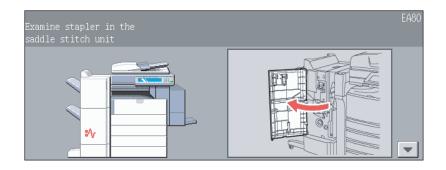
7 Close the front cover of the finisher.

# "READY (CHECK STAPLER)"



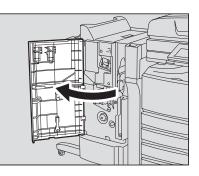
This message will be shown only when the finisher (optional) is installed. It appears when the staples in the stapler of the finisher run out or when the staples in the finisher are jammed. Clear the error according to the procedure in P.340 ""Time for Slit glass and Main charger cleaning".

## "Examine stapler in the Saddle Stitch Unit"

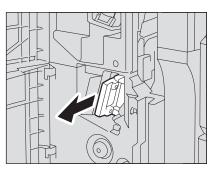


This message appears when the staples in the Saddle Stitch Unit of the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) are jammed. To remove them, follow the procedure below.

1 Open the front cover of the finisher.

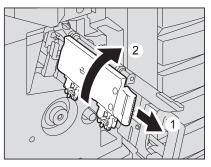


2 Slide the Saddle Stitch Unit carefully toward the front.

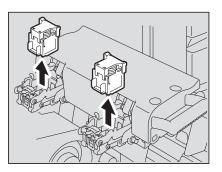


**3** Pull the handle of the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Unit toward you to unlock it. Then turn the stapler clockwise for about 60 degrees.

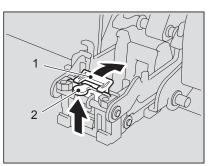
The stapler will be locked and will not be turned any further when it becomes almost horizontal.



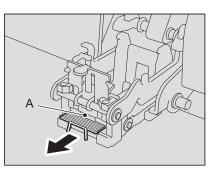
**4** Take off the staple cartridge.



5 While pushing the lever (1) downward, pull up the shutter with the knob (2).



6 Remove any jammed staples. A: Stapling area



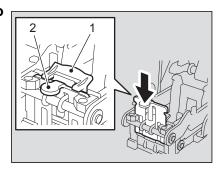
#### Caution

Do not touch the stapling area. The stapler could injure you.

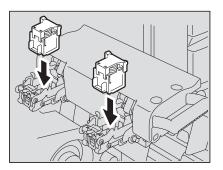


# Push the knob (2) to return it to its original position.

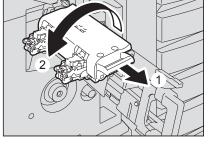
Confirm if the lever (1) is latched onto the shutter.

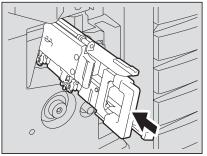


8 Install the staple cartridge.



- **9** Pull the handle of the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Unit toward you to unlock it. Then return the stapler to its original position.
- **10** Insert the Saddle Stitch Unit into the finisher carefully.





#### 11 Check the following 2 items before test stapling.

- Check if the finisher is securely installed on the equipment.
- Check if any of A3, B4 or A4-R paper is set in the drawer.

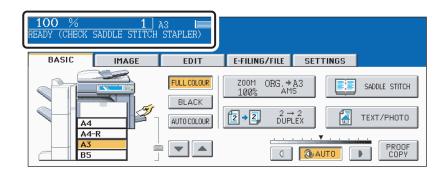
# **12** Close the front cover of the finisher.

Test stapling is automatically performed.

#### Tip

Test stapling will not be performed if the conditions mentioned in step 11 are not met. Be sure to check the items mentioned in step 11 and open the front cover of the finisher and then close it again before performing test stapling. Test stapling is necessary to prevent void stapling.

# "READY (CHECK SADDLE STITCH STAPLER)"



This message will be shown only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed. It appears when the staples in the stapler of the Saddle Stitch Finisher run out or when the staples in the Saddle Stitch Finisher are jammed.

Remove the jammed staples according to the procedure in D P.355 "Examine stapler in the Saddle Stitch Unit".

If the staples run out, follow the procedure below as well as the procedure in D P.348 ""Check staple cartridge in the Saddle Stitch Unit"".

#### **1** Follow steps 1 to 6 of III P.348 ""Check staple cartridge in the Saddle Stitch Unit"".

Do not close the front cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

#### **2** Check the following 2 items to perform test stapling.

- Whether the Saddle Stitch Finisher is securely installed in the equipment.
- Whether any A3, B4 or A4-R paper is set in the equipment.

#### **3** Close the front cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher.

Test stapling is automatically performed.

#### Tip

If the front cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher is closed without satisfying the condition of step 2, test stapling is not performed. Test stapling is necessary to prevent void stapling. After satisfying the condition of step 2 and opening/closing the front cover of the Saddle Stitch Finisher again, be sure to perform the test stapling.

# "READY (HOLE PUNCH DUST BIN IS FULL)"

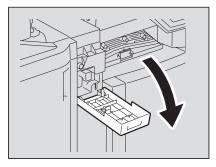
100 % READY (HOLE PT	1); UNCH DUST BIN	APS IS FULL)	
BASIC	IMAGE	EDIT	E-FILING/FILE SETTINGS
A4 A4 A3 B5	R	FULL COLOUR BLACK AUTO COLOUR	$\begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$

This message appears when the hole punch dustbin in the Hole Punch Unit (optional) becomes full.

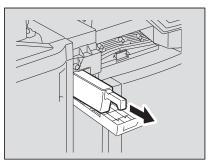
To dispose of the paper bits, follow the procedure below.

# Hole Punch Unit (optional: MJ-6101, MJ-6004)

1 Open the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.

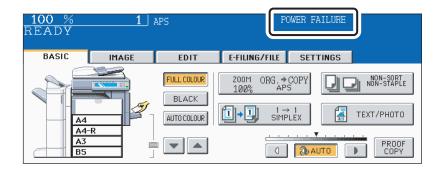


2 Pull out the hole punch dustbin.



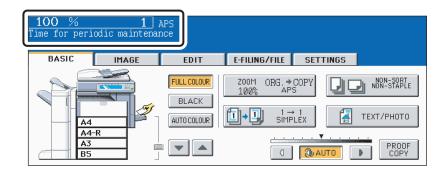
- **3** Dispose of the punched paper bits.
- Attach the hole punch dustbin.
- **5** Close the cover of the Hole Punch Unit.

# **"POWER FAILURE"**



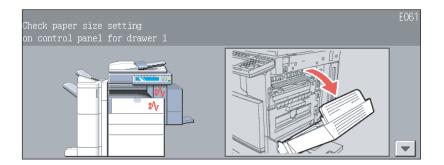
This message appears when a job is interrupted due to a power failure, etc. The print or Fax job in progress at the time of a power failure may not be completed. Confirm the job status by pressing the [JOB STATUS] button. To clear this message, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice.

# "Time for periodic maintenance"



This message appears when assistance from a qualified service technician is required. Contact your service representative.

# "Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer N"



This message appears when the size of the paper actually placed in the drawer or on the bypass tray differs from the one registered in the equipment for the corresponding drawer or the bypass tray. There are 5 messages of this type as shown below.

"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 1"

"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 2"

"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 3"

(Only when the Paper Feed Pedestal (optional) is installed)

"Check paper size setting on control panel for drawer 4"

(Only when the Paper Feed Pedestal and the Additional Drawer Module (optional) are installed) "Check paper size setting on control panel for Bypass"

In case that a paper misfeed occurs and one of the above messages consequently appears, another paper misfeed will occur if you just remove the jammed paper. Instead, be sure to follow the procedure below.

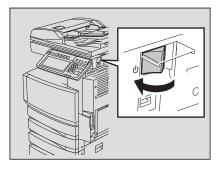
 Make a note of the position of the jammed paper and the number of the drawer displayed in the message in advance because guidance for removing the jammed paper is not displayed while you are working on the procedure.

This countermeasure differs depending on when the paper misfeeding has occurred – during copying or during printing from the Fax or the Printer.

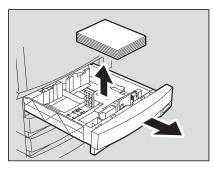
### During copying (using a drawer)

### 1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

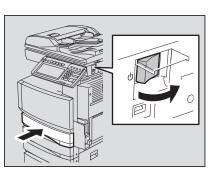
You cannot shut down the equipment.



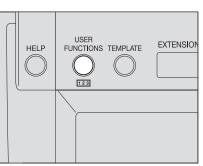
- **2** Remove the jammed paper. P.311 "Jam Symbols"
- **3** Pull out the drawer mentioned in the message. Then remove all the paper in it.



4 Close the drawer and then turn the power ON.



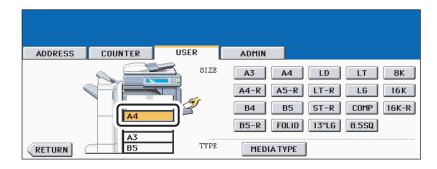
**5** Press the [USER FUNCTIONS] button on the control panel.



**6** Press the [USER] button on the touch panel to display the USER menu, and then press the [DRAWER] button.

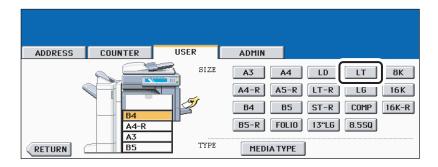
ADDRESS	COUNTER	USER	ADMIN		
	GENERAL	COPY		မ်) E-FILING	LIST
RETURN	DRAWER				

**7** Press the drawer button corresponding to the one mentioned in the message on the touch panel.



# **8** Press the paper size button corresponding to the one placed in the drawer.

P.54 "Preparation 3- Setting Copy Paper"



**9** Place the removed paper and the original, and then try to copy again.

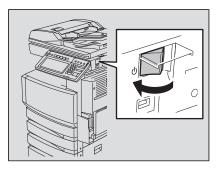
### Tip

When "POWER FAILURE" appears, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice to clear the message. See D P.360 ""POWER FAILURE"" for details.

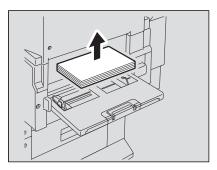
# During copying (using the bypass tray)

1 Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

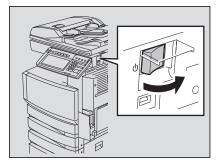
You cannot shut down the equipment.



- **Remove the jammed paper.** P.311 "Jam Symbols"
- **3** Remove all the paper from the bypass tray.



**4** Turn the power ON.



- **5** Place paper on the bypass tray and select the paper size.
- 6
- Place the original and try to copy again.

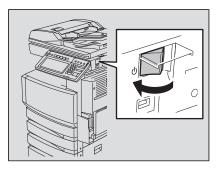
### Tip

When "POWER FAILURE" appears, press the [FUNCTION CLEAR] button twice to clear the message. See Q P.360 ""POWER FAILURE"" for details.

### During printing from the FAX or Printer (using a drawer)

Turn the power of the equip-1 ment OFF.

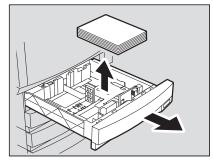
You cannot shut down the equipment.



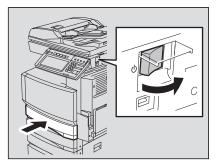


**2** Remove the jammed paper. P.311 "Jam Symbols"

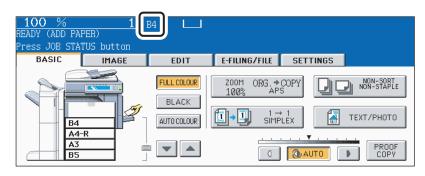
3 Pull out the drawer mentioned in the message. Then remove all the paper in it.



*L* Close the drawer and then turn the power ON.



**5** See the size indication on the touch panel to check the paper size registered for the drawer mentioned in the message.



6 Place the paper, whose size is same as the one you have checked at step 5, in the drawer mentioned in the message.

P.54 "Preparation 3- Setting Copy Paper"

**7** The job is resumed.

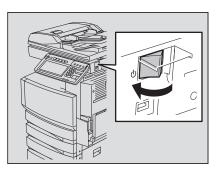
If you change the paper size again after the completion of the job, check that the paper size placed in the drawer is the same as the one registered in the equipment for the corresponding drawer.

# During printing from the Printer (using the bypass tray)

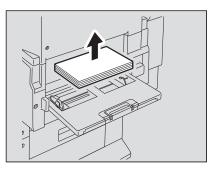
Paper will not be fed out of the bypass tray during a FAX reception.

**1** Turn the power of the equipment OFF.

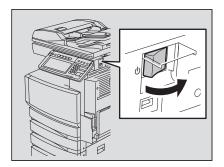
You cannot shut down the equipment.



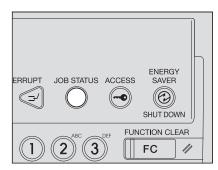
- **2** Remove the jammed paper. P.311 "Jam Symbols"
- **3** Remove all the paper from the bypass tray.



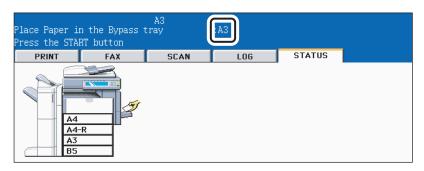
**4** Turn the power ON.



**5** Press the [JOB STATUS] button on the control panel.

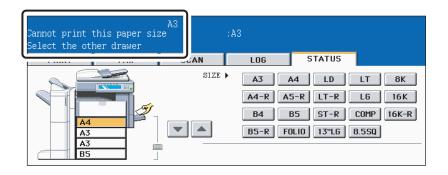


6 Place the paper of the size corresponding to the one shown next to the message "Place Paper in the Bypass tray :" on the bypass tray.



**7** Press the [START] button.

# "Cannot print this paper size Select the other drawer"



When the finisher is installed, A3-Wide paper cannot exit to the inner tray. Delete the print job, change the paper size you set for printing or specify the finisher as an exit tray, and tray again.

### Tips

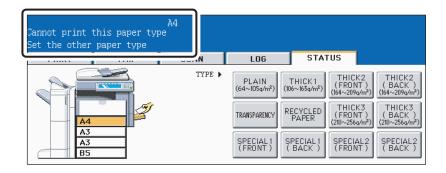
Printing can be performed without deleting the print job in the following two ways. However, some parts of the original image may be missing because the paper size smaller than A3-Wide will be used in both cases.

- Select a drawer button to be set as a paper source on the touch panel, and press the [START] button.
- Place paper other than A3-Wide size on the bypass tray and press the [START] button.

### Caution

Be sure to specify the paper size.

# "Cannot print this paper type Set the other paper type"



Special paper can exit only to the inner tray or the upper tray of the Finisher (MJ-1101). Delete the print job, select the inner tray or the upper tray of the Finisher (MJ-1101) as an exit tray, and try again.

# "Reboot the machine"



This message appears when the equipment cannot be operated normally because an error occurs but it may be released by rebooting the equipment. Since the equipment cannot be shut down with the control panel, reboot it with the power switch.

# 

# MAINTENANCE

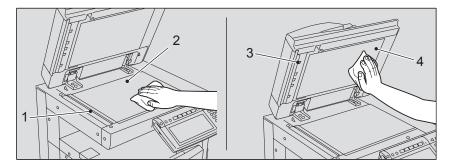
This chapter describes the maintenance procedures for high-quality copy output, and how to troubleshoot.

Daily Inspection	
Simple Troubleshooting	
Equipment does not start	
Paper jamming occurs frequently	
Display does not change when buttons or icons are pressed	
Functions cannot be set	
Image density is too low	
Image density is too high	
Image trouble	

# **Daily Inspection**

We recommend you to clean the following items weekly, so that the originals can be scanned in unsoiled conditions.

Be careful not to scratch the parts that you are cleaning.



1. Scanning area

Clean the surface with a dry soft cloth or a cloth lightly moistened with water. Do not use solvents such as alcohol.

- 2. Original glass
- 3. Guide
- 4. Platen sheet

Clean the surface as follows depending on the staining.

- Clean it with a soft cloth.
- Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with water.
- Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with alcohol, and then wipe it with a dry cloth.
- Clean it with a soft cloth lightly moistened with watered-down neutral detergent, and then wipe it with a dry cloth.

### Caution

- Do not use solvents such as thinner or benzine when cleaning the surface of the equipment. This could warp the shape of the surface or leave it discoloured.
- When using a chemical cleaning pad to clean it, follow the instructions.

# Simple Troubleshooting

Check the following items and, if the problem still occurs, call your service representative for assistance.

# Equipment does not start

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the power cord plug securely	Insert the power cord plug until it	-
inserted in the outlet?	comes to a stop.	
Is the front cover firmly closed?	Close the cover properly.	P.30 "Description of Each
		Component"

# Paper jamming occurs frequently

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Does the message: "Check	Match the size of the paper	P.362 ""Check paper size set-
paper size setting on control	placed in the drawer or on the	ting on control panel for drawer
panel for drawer N (Bypass)"	bypass tray and the one regis-	N""
appear?	tered to the equipment.	
Does the paper placed exceed	Remove some of the sheets of	P.56 "Placing paper in the
the line indicated inside of the	paper and place them with the	drawer"
side guide?	paper height not exceeding the	
-	line indicated.	
Is the space between the side	Keep an appropriate space	P.56 "Placing paper in the
guide of the drawer or the	between the side guide and	drawer"
bypass tray and the paper too	paper, and then place paper	
narrow/wide?	straight along the side guide.	
Has all of the jammed paper	Since the jammed paper may not	P.311 "Jam Symbols"
removed?	be easily found, follow the guid-	
	ance shown on the touch panel.	

# Display does not change when buttons or icons are pressed

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the equipment in the energy	Press the [ENERGY SAVER] or	P.52 "Energy Saving Mode"
saving mode (Automatic energy	[START] button on the control	
saving mode)?	panel to clear the mode. (It takes	
	a while for the equipment to	
	become ready.)	
Is the power OFF because the	Press the [START] button to	See the [User Function Guide]
weekly timer functions?	return the power ON.	
When the use of the equipment	Key in the correct department	P.46 "When department or
is managed under department	code.	user management is used"
management, is the correct		
code entered?		
When the use of the equipment	Enter the user information cor-	P.46 "When department or
is managed under user manage-	rectly.	user management is used"
ment, is the correct information		
entered?		
Is the "Warming up" message	Wait until the equipment	P.45 "Turning power on"
displayed?	becomes ready.	

# Functions cannot be set

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Are there functions that cannot be combined set together?	See the copying function combi- nation and image quality adjust- ment combination matrices, and then set them again.	P.389 "Copying Function Com- bination Matrix", P.391 "Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix"

# Image density is too low

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the message to replace the toner cartridge displayed on the touch panel?	Replace the toner cartridge.	P.302 "Replace Toner Car- tridge Symbol"
Is the level of the colour adjust- ment set suitably?	Use the manual density buttons or the background adjustment function to adjust the image den- sity properly.	P.136 "Copy Density Adjust- ment", P.144 "Background Adjustment"

# Image density is too high

Item to be checked	Countermeasure	Reference page
Is the level of the colour adjust- ment set suitably?	Use the manual density buttons or the background adjustment function to adjust the image den- sity properly.	P.136 "Copy Density Adjust- ment", P.144 "Background Adjustment"

# Image trouble

Phenomenon	Usual cause	Countermeasure
The copied image is stained.	The Automatic Document Feeder (optional) or the Platen Cover (optional) is not lowered fully.	Lower them fully to block outside light.
	The original glass, platen sheet, scanning area or guides are dirty.	Clean them. P.374 "Daily Inspection"
	The copy density is set darker.	Make the density lighter if you use the manual copy density mode. Or use the automatic copy density mode.
	A highly transparent original is used.	Place a blank sheet of paper, the same size as the original or larger, over the original.

Phenomenon	Usual cause	Countermeasure
The copy image is fogged.	There is a slight gap between the original glass and the original.	Lower the Platen Cover (optional) or the Automatic Document Feeder (optional) fully so that the original will contact with the original glass.
The copy image is partially missing.	The size or direction of the copy paper and the original, or the reproduction ratio is not set properly.	Use copy paper of the same size as the original or set the reproduction ratio suit- able to the copy paper size.
The copy image has black streaks in a horizontal direc- tion.	The scanning area or guides are stained.	Clean them. P.374 "Daily Inspection"
4	The main charger is dirty.	Clean the main charger. P.343 "Cleaning the chargers"
The copy image has white streaks in a horizontal direction.	The slit glass is dirty.	Clean the slit glass. P.340 "Cleaning the slit glass"
The density level of the copy image is uneven in a horizon- tal direction.	The main charger is dirty.	Clean the main charger.

# 12

# **SPECIFICATIONS & OPTIONS**

e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c Specifications	
Specifications of Options	
Packing List	
Copying Function Combination Matrix	
Combination Matrix 1/2	
Combination Matrix 2/2	
Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix	
Combination Matrix 1/2	
Combination Matrix 2/2	

# e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c Specifications

Model name		FC-2500C/FC-3500C/FC-3510C			
Туре		Desktop type			
Original glass		Fixed			
Printing (copying) system		Indirect electrophotographic method			
Developing system		2-component magnetic brush developing			
Fixing method		Belt fusing			
Photosensor type		OPC			
Original scanning syste	em	Flat surface scanning system (When the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder is installed: Fixed scanning system by feeding the original)			
Original scanning sens	or	Linear CCD sensor			
Scanning light source		Xenon lamp			
Resolution	Scanning	600 dpi x 600 dpi			
	Writing	Black-and-white: 2400 dpi x 600 dpi (Smoothing process),1 bit Colour, Image smoothing: 600 dpi x 600 dpi, 8 bits			
Acceptable originals		Sheets, books and 3-dimensional objects			
Acceptable original size	e	Max. A3			
Acceptable copy paper size	Drawer	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST- R, COMP, 13" LG, 8.5" SQ, 8K, 16K, 16K-R			
	Bypass	Paper size within 100 - 305 mm (Length), 148 - 457 mm (Width)			
Acceptable copy	Drawer	64 - 163 g/m <sup>2</sup>			
paper weight	Bypass	64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>			
Warm-up time		Approx. 99 seconds			
First copy time (A4 portrait)		Black-and-white e-STUDIO2500c/3500c: Approx. 6.5 seconds e-STUDIO3510c: Approx. 5.2 seconds Colour Approx. 8.5 seconds			
Continuous copy speed	t	See 💷 P.382 "Continuous copying speed".			
Multiple copying		Up to 999 copies (digital key entry)			
Excluded image width	Black-and- white	Leading edge: 3.0±2.0 mm, Trailing edge: 3.0±2.0 mm, Both edge: 2.0±2.0 mm			
	Colour	Leading edge: 5.0+2.0/-1.0 mm, Trailing edge: 3.0±2.0 mm, Both edge: 2.0±2.0 mm			
	Printer (Black-and- white/Colour)	Leading edge: 5.0+2.0/-1.0 mm, Trailing edge: 5.0±2.0 mm, Both edge: 5.0±2.0 mm			
Reproduction ratio	Actual size	100±0.5%			
	Zoom	25 - 400% (in 1% increments)			
		For the Reversing Automatic Document Feeder 25 - 200% (in 1% increments)			
Paper supply	Drawer	550 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), 450 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )			
	Bypass	100 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), 80 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )			
Receiving tray loading	capacity	Approx. 550 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )			
Toner density adjustme	ent	Magnetic auto-toner system			
Exposure control		Automatic plus manual selection from 11 exposure step			
Environment (for norma	al use)	Temperature: 10 - 30 °C, Humidity: 20 - 85% (No Condensation)			
Power requirements		AC220 V±10%, 8 A (50/60 Hz)			
Power consumption		1.7 kW or less (including optional equipments)			
Dimensions (equipment only)		699 mm (W) x 761 mm (D) x 759 mm (H)			

Weight	Approx. 113 kg (equipment including developer and drum)
Space occupied (equipment only)	1055 mm (W) x 855 mm (D)
Storage capacity	Max. 1000 sheets or until the memory is full (Toshiba's own chart)

• This specification varies depending on the copying conditions and the environment.

• Specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement.

### Continuous copying speed

### e-STUDIO2500c

sheets/min.

					Media	a type			
Paper size	Feeder	RECY	AIN/ 'CLED PER	тні	CK1	тн	CK2	тн	CK3
		Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1
A4, A5-R, B5, LT,	Drawer	35	25	17.5	17.5	-	-	-	-
ST-R, 8.5" SQ	Bypass tray	35	25	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5
A4-R, B5-R, LT-R	Drawer	26	20	13	13	-	-	-	-
	Bypass tray	26	20	13	13	13	13	13	13
B4, FOLIO, LG, COMP,	Drawer	22	17	10.5	10.5	-	-	-	-
13" LG	Bypass tray	22	17	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
A3, LD	Drawer	18	15	8.5	8.5	-	-	-	-
	Bypass tray	18	15	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5

### e-STUDIO3500c

sheets/min.

					Media	a type			
Paper size	Feeder	PLAIN/ RECYCLED PAPER		THICK1		THICK2		THICK3	
		Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1
A4, A5-R, B5, LT,	Drawer	35	35	17.5	17.5	-	-	-	-
ST-R, 8.5" SQ	Bypass tray	35	35	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5
A4-R, B5-R, LT-R	Drawer	26	26	13	13	-	-	-	-
	Bypass tray	26	26	13	13	13	13	13	13
B4, FOLIO, LG, COMP,	Drawer	22	22	10.5	10.5	-	-	-	-
13" LG	Bypass tray	22	22	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5
A3, LD	Drawer	18	18	8.5	8.5	-	-	-	-
	Bypass tray	18	18	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5

### e-STUDIO3510c

sheets/min.

		Media type								
Paper size	Feeder	PLAIN/ RECYCLED PAPER		THICK1		THICK2		ТНІСКЗ		
		Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	Black -and- white	Colour *1	
A4, A5-R, B5, LT,	Drawer	45	35	17.5	17.5	-	-	-	-	
ST-R, 8.5" SQ	Bypass tray	45	35	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	17.5	
A4-R, B5-R, LT-R	Drawer	32	26	13	13	-	-	-	-	
	Bypass tray	32	26	13	13	13	13	13	13	
B4, FOLIO, LG, COMP,	Drawer	26	22	10.5	10.5	-	-	-	-	
13" LG	Bypass tray	26	22	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	10.5	
A3, LD	Drawer	22	18	8.5	8.5	-	-	-	-	
	Bypass tray	22	18	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	8.5	

\*1 FULL COLOUR, TWIN COLOUR, MONO COLOUR, IMAGE SMOOTHING

- The bypass copying speed is as listed above when specifying the paper size.
- The values above are measured when originals are set on the original glass, 1-sided, 100% and non-sort multiple copies are made.
- The copying speed values for Black and white are measured when the auto exposure is used. The copying speed values for colour are measured when the manual exposure is used.
- This specification varies depending on the copying conditions and the environment.
- Toshiba-recommended paper is used for the values of this specification above.

# **Specifications of Options**

### **Reversing Automatic Document Feeder**

Model name	MR-3018
Copy sides	1-side, Duplex
Number of originals (A4)	100 originals (35 - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) or 16 mm or less in height (more than 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Feeding speed	Black-and-white: 105 - 420 mm
	Colour: 52.5 - 210 mm
Acceptable originals	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP (A5
	and ST size are not acceptable.)
Paper weight	1-sided original: 35 - 157 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 2-sided original: 50 - 157 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Power source	DC24 V (supplied from the equipment)
Dimensions	600 mm (W) x 523 mm (D) x 135 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 12.5 kg
Power consumption	49.5 W max.

### Large Capacity Feeder

Model name	KD-1019A4
Acceptable paper size	A4
Paper weight	64 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Maximum capacity	2500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), 450 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) (Height: approx. 137 mm x 2)
Power source	DC5 V, DC24 V (supplied from the equipment)
Dimensions	623 mm (W) x 657 mm (D) x 308 mm (H) (incl. Stabilizer)
Weight	Approx. 27 kg

### Paper Feed Pedestal (1 drawer type)

Model name	KD-1018
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP (A5, ST and non-standard size are not acceptable.)
Paper weight	64 - 163 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Maximum capacity	550 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), 450 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Dimensions	623 mm (W) x 657 mm (D) x 320 mm (H)
Weight	Approx. 21.5 kg

### Additional Drawer Module

Model name	MY-1031
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, ST-R, COMP (A5, ST and non-standard size are not acceptable.)
Paper weight	64 - 163 g/m <sup>2</sup>
Maximum capacity	550 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ), 450 sheets (90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
Weight	Approx. 3.8 kg

### Finisher (MJ-1101)

Model name	MJ-1101	MJ-1101					
Туре	Floor type (Console type)						
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5	5, B5-R, FOLIO, I	.D, LG, LT, LT-R, S	ST-R, COMP			
Acceptable paper weight	60 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>						
Number of copies sta- pled at a time	Paper size	60 - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	81 - 90 g/m <sup>2</sup>	91 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>			
	A4, B5, LT, 8.5"SQ, 16K	50 sheets	30 sheets	30 sheets			
(Including 2 covers (60 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ))	A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8K	30 sheets	15 sheets	15 sheets			
Stapling position	Front, Rear, Double	l					
Power source	Supplied from the equipmer	Supplied from the equipment					
Dimensions	535 mm (W) x 598 mm (D) x 1092 mm (H)						
Weight	Approx. 34 kg						
Power consumption	70 W max.						

### Finisher (MJ-1101)

### Unit: inch (with allowable error of ±7 mm)

### Values in parentheses: Number of sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

### **Upper Tray**

MJ-1101 with mixed paper not loaded					
Mode	Non-Sort				
A4, B5, A5-R, LT, ST-R, 8.5"SQ, 16K	36.75 mm (250)				
A3, A4-R, B4, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP, 13"LG, 8K, 16K-R	18.4 mm (125)				

### Lower Tray

MJ-1101 with mixed paper not loaded						
Mode	Non-Sort	Sort/Group	Staples loaded			
A4, B5, LT	294 mm (2000)	294 mm (2000)	Whichever of 294 mm, 2000 sheets or 30 copies is reached first			
A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP	147 mm (1000)	147 mm (1000)	Whichever of 147 mm, 1000 sheets or 30 copies is reached first			

When mixed-size paper is loaded, the tray loading capacity should follow the specifications for larger paper sizes in the above tables.

### Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1030)

Model name	MJ-1030			
Туре	Floor type (Console type)			
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, A5-R, B4, B5,	B5-R, FOLIO, I	LD, LG, LT, LT-R	R, ST-R, COMP
Acceptable paper weight	64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup>			
Number of copies stapled	Paper size	80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	90 g/m <sup>2</sup>	105 g/m <sup>2</sup>
at a time	A4, B5, LT	50 sheets	26 sheets	24 sheets
(Including 2 covers	A3, A4-R, B4, FOLIO, LD,	30 sheets	15 sheets	15 sheets
(64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ))	LG, LT-R, COMP			
Stapling position	Front, Rear, Double			
Stitching capacity	Paper size	80 g/m <sup>2</sup>	90 g/m <sup>2</sup>	105 g/m <sup>2</sup>
(Including 1 cover	A3, A4-R, B4, LD, LT-R	15 sheets	10 sheets	10 sheets
(64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> ))				
Power source	Supplied from the equipment			
Dimensions	649 mm (762 mm) (W) x 657	mm (D) x 1068	3 mm (H)	
Weight	Approx. 70 kg			
Power consumption	170 W max.			

### Tray loading capacity of Saddle Stitch Finisher (MJ-1030)

(MJ-1030 with mixed paper not loaded)

Mode	Non-	-Sort	Sort/0	Group	Staples	loaded
Tray No.	1	2	1	2	1	2
A4, A5-R, B5, LT, ST-R		mm 00)		mm 00)	Whichever of 147 mm, 1000 sheets or 30 cop- ies is reached first	Whichever of 147 mm, 1000 sheets or 30 cop- ies is reached first
A3, A4-R, B4, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP		mm 00)		mm 00)	Whichever of 73.5 mm, 500 sheets or 30 copies is reached first	Whichever of 73.5 mm, 500 sheets or 30 copies is reached first

• Sort/Group/Staple is not available with A5-R, B5-R, ST-R.

- See P.120 "Available conditions for saddle stitching" for tray loading capacity of saddle stitch tray.
- If copied paper remains on the receiving tray and the next copying job is performed, the loading capacity is the same as that for mixed paper.

### (MJ-1030 with mixed paper loaded)

Unit: inch (with allowable error of ±7 mm)

Values in parentheses: Number of sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup>)

Mode	Non	-Sort	Sort/0	Group	Staples	loaded
Tray No.	1	2	1	2	1	2
FOLIO and A4-R		mm 00)		5 mm 00)	Whichever of 73.5 mm, 500 sheets or 30	Whichever of 73.5 mm, 500 sheets or 30
A3 and A4					copies is reached first	copies is reached first
B4 and B5						
LD and LT						
LG and LT-R						

### Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6101 Series)

Model name	MJ-6101 Series
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
Acceptable paper weight	64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (OHP film and specially treated paper are not available.)
Dimensions	112 mm (W) x 617 mm (D) x 378 mm (H) (excl. Lower cover)
Weight	Approx. 9 kg

	Number of punching holes and hole diameter	Available paper size
Japan and most of	2 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R,
Europe (MJ-6101E)	(6.5 mm dia.)	FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
North America	2/3 holes switchable	2 holes: A4-R, LG, LT-R
(MJ-6101N)	(8.0 mm dia.)	3 holes: A3, A4, LD, LT
France	4 holes	A3, A4, LD, LT
(MJ-6101F)	(6.5 mm dia.; 80 mm pitch)	
Sweden	4 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R,
(MJ-6101S)	(6.5 mm dia.; 70 mm and 21 mm pitch)	FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP

### Hole Punch Unit (MJ-6004 Series)

Model name	MJ-6004 Series
Acceptable paper size	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R, FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
Acceptable paper weight	64 - 256 g/m <sup>2</sup> (OHP film and specially treated paper are not available.)
Dimensions	112 mm (W) x 617 mm (D) x 378 mm (H) (excl. Lower cover)
Weight	Approx. 9 kg

	Number of punching holes and hole diameter	Available paper size
Japan and most of	2 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R,
Europe (MJ-6004E)	(6.5 mm dia.)	FOLIO, LD, LG, LT, LT-R, COMP
North America	2/3 holes switchable	2 holes: A4-R, LG, LT-R
(MJ-6004N)	(8.0 mm dia.)	3 holes: A3, A4, LD, LT
France	4 holes	A3, A4, LD, LT
(MJ-6004F)	(6.5 mm dia.; 80 mm pitch)	
Sweden	4 holes	A3, A4, A4-R, B4, B5, B5-R,
(MJ-6004S)	(6.5 mm dia.; 70 mm and 21 mm pitch)	FOLIO, LD, LG, LT-R, COMP

### Bridge Unit

Model name	KN-3500

• Toshiba-recommended paper is used for the values above. Specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice in the interest of product improvement.

# Packing List

Packing list	Setup instructions
	Operator's Manual
	Photoconductive drum
	Operator's Manual pocket
	Setup report
	Warranty sheet
	CD-ROM (2 pcs.)
	Stopper (for control panel)

# **Combination Matrix 1/2**

	Store to		hind dol.	Fullimade	Sheet insertion	sertion		Cover sheet	haat			Editing	2		Dual page XY zoom	H moor A		2IN1//1/11	mane
	e-Filing	Elle			ŏ		Top copied b back blank	Both T-		Top blank Nega/Pos Mask	ega/Pos M		F	Mirror	5 5 5		centre erase		shift
Bypass copy	*	۰.	Yes	٠.	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	٠٩	*۱	*۱	+۱	*1	Yes	*2	*4	*۱
1 - 1 Simplex	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	*4	Yes	Yes	*4	Yes
1 - 2 Duplex	Yes	\$*	Yes	Yes	хөү	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	*4	Yes	Yes	*4	Yes
2 - 1 Split	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	٩	*4	Yes
2 - 2 Duplex	Yes	\$*	Yes	Yes	səY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	*4	Yes
Book - 2	Yes	Yes	٩	No	No	Ŷ	Ŷ	No	No	No	٩	No	٩	Ñ	Ŷ	٩	Ŷ	Ŷ	Yes
Non-sort/Non-staple	*4	Yes	*5	Yes	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Sort	Yes	Yes	*5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Group	Yes	Yes	*5	Yes	No	N	N	N	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Staple sort	Yes	Yes	\$*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Magazine sort	N	No	Ŷ	No	No	Ŷ	N	N	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	N	N	No	٩	No
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch	Ñ	Ñ	Ŷ	No	No	٩	Ŷ	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	٩ N	Ŷ	٩	No	Ŷ	No
Hole punch	Yes	Yes	\$*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Saddle stitch	Yes	Yes	\$*	No	No	Ŷ	Ŷ	No	Yes	Yes	٩	No	٩	Ñ	Ŷ	٩	No	Ŷ	No
Rotate sort	Yes	Yes	\$*	No	No	Ŷ	Ŷ	No	٩	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Ŷ	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mixed original sizes	Yes	Yes	*5	Yes	No	Ŷ	٩	No	٩	No	٩	No	٩	٩	٩	٩	No	Ŷ	No
SADF	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	1	Yes	:	Yes	Yes
Image direction	Yes	Yes	*5	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes
Book - Tablet	Yes	Yes	\$*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	No
Edge erase	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	No	٩	٩	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	Yes
Image shift	*4	*4	\$*	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	9*	Yes	Yes	Yes	
2IN1/4IN1	*4	*4	٩	No	No	Ŷ	Ŷ	No	٩	No	٩	No	٩	Ñ	Ŷ	٩	Ŷ		
Book centre erase	Yes	Yes	\$*	No	No	Ŷ	Ŷ	No	٩	No	٩	No	٩	Yes	Ŷ	Yes			
XY zoom	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	No	٩	٩	٩				
Dual page	Yes	*3	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No					
Mirror	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No						
Trim	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No							
Mask	Yes	Yes	٩	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٥								
Nega/Pos	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	səY	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes									
Top blank	*4	*4	No	No	Yes	Yes	1	-	-										
Cover Top copied	*4	*4	Ŷ	No	Yes	Yes	1	:											
	*4	*4	٩	No	Yes	Yes	;												
Top copied back blank	ank *4	*4	٩	No	Yes	Yes				*۱	Size sele	Size selection is required.	uired.						
Sheet Blank	*4	*4	Ŷ	Yes	ı					*2		ction is rec	uired for [[	DOUBLE ST	Size selection is required for [DOUBLE STAPLE] and [REAR STAPLE].	[REAR ST	FAPLE].		
insertion Copied	*4	*4	No	Yes						£*		stored intc	the file are	the same	The data stored into the file are the same as the ones for simplex copying.	for simple	sx copying.		
Full image	No	ő	٩							*4	. The funct	The function set later will be valid.	er will be va	lid.					
Job build	*5	\$*								\$*	The settir	ig cannot i	be changec	The setting cannot be changed from 2nd job or later.	ob or later.				
Copy & File	Ñ									9*		Bookbinding margin is not available.	is not avai	lable.					
Store to e-Filing			I							L*		when the	oaper width	Available when the paper width is the same	je				
		1																	

# **Combination Matrix 2/2**

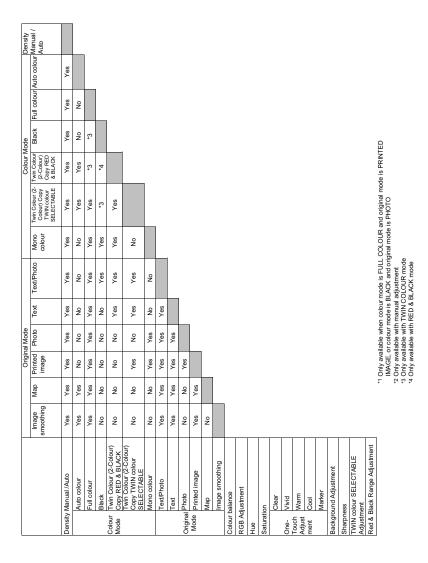
1 - 1 Bypass Simplex copy	Yes																																						
1 - 2 Duplex Sim	+	1		]																																			
2 - 1 Split D(	Yes	1	1																															FAPLE].	sx copying.				
2 - 2 Duplex	٠1	:	1	;																														*2 Size selection is required for [DOUBLE STAPLE] and [REAR STAPLE].	*3 The data stored into the file are the same as the ones for simplex copying.				
Book - 2	۰.	ı	I	I	1																													STAPLE] ar	e as the on		l job or late		me
Non-sort/ Non- staple	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			1																									[DOUBLE (	are the same	valid.	*5 The setting cannot be changed from 2nd job or later.	ailable.	*7 Available when the paper width is the same
Sort	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	1			1																							equired.	equired for	nto the file a	*4 The function set later will be valid.	ot be change	*6 Bookbinding margin is not available.	ie paper wic
Group	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	:	;																									*1 Size selection is required.	election is r	ata stored ir	nction set Is	etting canno	inding març	ble when th
Staple sort	*2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	:	;	:			1																					*1 Size si	*2 Size si	*3 The da	*4 The fu	*5 The se	*6 Bookb	*7 Availal
Magazine Magazine Staple sort & Saddle stitch	*	*4	Yes	Ñ	Yes	No	1	I	ı	I																													
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch	*1	*4	Yes	Ŷ	Yes	٩	1	ı	1	1	I		_	I																									
Hole punch	*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٥N	No																											
Saddle stitch	۰.	*4	*4	*4	Yes	*4	:	;	:	;	;	-	°N N																										
Rotate sort	*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	*4	Ŷ	*			1																						
Mixed original sizes	*1	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes	۲*	٩N	No	Yes	Ŷ	Yes																								
SADF	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	I	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			I																				
Image direction	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			1																			
Book - Tablet	*	*4	*4	*4	Yes	Ñ	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	٥N	No	Yes	ő	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes			1																		
Edge erase	*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	ő	Yes	Yes	Yes				1	1	1	1		1					1		1	1		1	
	copy	mplex	ха	lit	tplex	2	Non-sort/Non-staple			sort	ne sort	Magazine sort & Saddle stitch	inch	stitch	sort	Mixed original sizes		mage direction	Tablet	ase	shift	N1	Book centre erase	F	ge	Mirror	Trim	Mask	Nega/Pos	Top blank	Top copied	Both blank	Top copied back blank	Blank	n Copied	ige	p	File	Store to e-Filing
	Bypass copy	1 - 1 Simplex	*4 Duplex	2 - 1 Split	2 - 2 Duplex	Book - 2	Non-sor	Sort	Group	Staple sort	Magazine sort	Magazir	Hole punch	Saddle stitch	Rotate sort	Mixed o	SADF	Image c	Book - Tablet	Edge erase	Image shift	2IN1/4IN1	Book ce	XY zoom	Dual page		L State	Eaung			Cover	sheet		Sheet	insertion	Full image	Job build	Copy & File	Store to

# Image Quality Adjustment Combination Matrix

# **Combination Matrix 1/2**

		Red & Black		Sharpness	Background		One-To	One-Touch Adjustment	stment	ľ	Saturation Hue	Hue	RGB	
		Range Adjustment	SELECTABLE Adjustment		Adjustment	Marker	Cool	Warm	Vivid	Clear			Adjustment	balance
Density	Density Manual /Auto	Yes	Yes	Yes	*2	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Auto colour	٩	No	٩	٩	Ŷ	Yes	Yes	Yes	٩	No	No	Yes	Yes
	Full colour	٩	N	٩	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Black	٩	Ŷ	٩	Yes	Yes	٩	Yes	Ŷ	٩	No	No	No	No
Colour Mode	Twin Colour (2-Colour) Copy RED & BLACK	No	N	Yes	Yes	*	*	Ŷ	°N	Ŷ	No	No	No	No
	Twin Colour (2-Colour) Copy TWIN colour SELECTABLE	Ñ	Yes	Yes	*	۴.	No	Ŷ	٩	N	No	No	No	No
	Mono colour	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
	Text/Photo	N	Ŷ	٩	٩	Ŷ	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Text	٩	N	٩	٩	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Original	I Photo	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Mode	Printed image	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Map	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
	Image smoothing	٩	No	No	٩	٩	٥N	Ŷ	Ŷ	Ň	Yes	Yes	No	Ŷ
Colour	Colour balance	No	Yes	Yes	٥N	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No	
RGB A	RGB Adjustment	Yes	Yes	No	٥N	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No		
Hue		Yes	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No			
Saturation	ion	No	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	No				
	Clear	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No					
One-	Vivid	No	No	No	No	No	No	No						
I ouch Adiust	Warm	No	No	No	No	No	No							
ment	Cool	No	No	No	No	No								
	Marker	No	No	No	No									
Backgr	Background Adjustment	Yes	Yes	Yes										
Sharpness	ess	Yes	Yes											
TWIN color Adjustment	WIN colour SELECTABLE djustment	Yes												
Red & I	Red & Black Range Adjustment													
							Only avai PRINTEC Only avail Only avail	lable whe IMAGE, lable with lable with	or colour manual TWIN C	*1 Only available when colour mode is FULL PRINTED IMAGE, or colour mode is BLA( 2 Only available with manual adjustment *3 Only available with TWIN COLOUR mode COLOUR mode	ULL COLO BLACK and it rode	UR and c original i	11 Only available when colour mode is FULL COLOUR and original mode is PRNITED IMAGE, or colour mode is BLACK and original mode is PHOTO 2 Only available with TWIN manual adjustment 3: Only available with TWIN COLOUR mode	is D
						1	Unly avai	lable wiu.	צבר מ		ade			

# **Combination Matrix 2/2**



# INDEX

### Numerics

1-sided original -> 1-sided copy	125,	126
1-sided original -> 2-sided copy	125,	127
2-colour copy		146
2IN1 / 4IN1		168
2-sided original -> 1-sided copy	125,	129
2-sided original -> 2-sided copy	125,	128

### Α

Acceptable copy paper54	4
ACCESS button	8
Additional Drawer Module 31, 34, 384	4
ADF	6
Adjusting the contrast of the touch panel 43	3
AMS 104	4
APS	8
APS/AMS or currently selected paper size 4	1
Automatic copy density mode 13	
Automatic duplexing unit	7
Automatic function clear43	3
Automatic Magnification Selection (AMS) 104	4
Automatic Paper Selection (APS)	8
AUTOMATIC START	2

### В

Background adjustment	144
Black toner cartridge	33, 302
BLANK	183
Blinking graphic symbols	
BOOK - TABLET	195
BOOK CENTRE ERASE	164
Book-type original -> 2-sided copy12	25, 130
Book-type originals	
BOTH BLANK	180
Bottom margin	157
Bridge Unit	22, 387
Bypass copying	
Bypass copying	85
Non-standard size paper	91
Standard size paper	86
Bypass tray	

### С

Call service symbol	333
Canceling the energy saving mode	53
Caution	
Changing data of user boxes	206
Changing the data of a template	
Changing the data of a user group	
Changing the setting of paper size	61
Charger cleaner	33
Cleaning	374
CLEAR button	38
Clearing functions selected	43
Clearing the drawer for special uses	64

Colour balance	140
Colour mode	103
Colour mode button	41
Colour toner cartridge	302
Configuration of options	34
Confirming and canceling auto job	83
Confirming job history in log list	280
Confirming print job status	263
Confirming scan job status	278
Connector-1 for USB storage device	31
Continuing printing after proof printing	268
Continuous feed mode	
Control panel	. 32, 37
COPIED	183
COPY button	37
Copy density adjustment	136
Copying function combination matrix	389
Copying mixed-sized originals	
in one operation	101
Copying procedure	77
COVER SHEET	
Creating user boxes	204
Cyan toner cartridge	33

### D

Daily inspection	
Date and time	
Deleting a template	
Deleting a user group	
Deleting folders or documents	
Deleting invalid print jobs	277
Deleting print jobs	
Deleting private print jobs	
Deleting proof print jobs	
Deleting user boxes	
Density adjustment buttons	41
Department codes	
Department management	
Description of each component	
Digital keys	
Disclaimer notice	27
Displaying invalid queues	
Displaying private print job list	270
Displaying proof print job list	
Drawer	
Drawer feeding area	
Drawer for special uses	62
Drawers	
DUAL PAGE	
Duplex copying	125

### Е

EDGE ERASE	163
EDITING	173
e-Filing	202
e-FILING button	37

	ENERGY SAVER button38ENERGY SAVER/SHUT DOWN button53Energy saving mode52Enlargement and reduction copying104Enlargement/Reduction (Zoom) button41Equipment status indication area41Error code290, 300ERROR lamp38EXTENSION button37
--	---

### F

FAX button
Finisher
Finisher 110, 346, 352
Name of each part in the Finisher
Removing jammed staples
Saddle Stitch Finisher
Finisher button
Fixed tray 111
Folder
Front cover
FULL IMAGE
FUNCTION CLEAR button
Function setting area
Fuser unit

### **G** G€

General precautions	
During maintenance or inspection	26
General precautions	21
When handling supplies	26
When installing or moving	21
When using the Multifunctional	
digital colour systems	23
Group copying11	0, 112

### Н

Handling and storing paper	 		55
HELP button	 		37
Hole punch	 	.110,	121
Hole Punch Unit35,			

### I

IMAGE DIRECTION 1	93
Image quality adjustment combination matrix	
	391
IMAGE SHIFT 1	57
Index buttons	41
Initial (default) settings	76
INTERRUPT button	38
Interrupt copying in progress and	
make other copies (Interrupt copying)	84

### J

Jam releasing cover	318
Jam symbols	
JOB BUILD	
Job status	262
JOB STATUS button	38

## Κ

K format		68
Keying in	correct department code to print	276

### L

Large Capacity Feeder	31, 3	34,	315,	384
LDAP authentication				47
Left margin				157
l og list				279

### Μ

Magazine sort 11	0, 171
Magazine sort & Saddle stitch 11	0, 118
Magenta toner cartridge	
Maintenance	374
Making Copies	76
Manual copy density mode	137
Manual paper selection	100
Margin157, 15	9, 161
Masking	
Maximum number of sheets for scanning	69
Maximum number of sheets for stapling	
Message	41
Message display	41
MFP local authentication	
Mirror image	176
MONITOR/PAUSE button	
Moving print jobs	266

### Ν

Negative/Positive reversal1	77
Network interface connector	.31
Number of copy sets	.41

### 0

One-touch adjustment	
One-touch zoom buttons	
Operator's Manual pocket	30
Original Cover	34
Original glass	32
Original mode	134
Original mode button	41
Original scale	33
Original stopper	68

### Ρ

Packing list	.388
PAGE NUMBER	. 187

Paper exit stopper Paper feed cover Paper feed cover (optional) Paper Feed Pedestal Paper selection Paper size indicator Paper source selection buttons	
Paper type	62
Pausing print jobs	
Placing originals on the glass	
Placing paper in the drawer	
Platen sheet	
Power switch	
PRINT DATA / MEMORY RX /	27
FAX communication lamps	
Print jobs	
Print log	
Print status display	
Printing journals	
Printing private print jobs	
Printing stored documents	
Private print jobs	
Proof Copy PROOF COPY button	
Proof print jobs	
Public box	
Public group	-
Public template group	

# R

Recalling templates Receive log Receiving tray Recommended paper Registering a template	. 282 33
in the public template group	. 230
Registering a template in the user group	
Registering into address book from log lists	. 284
Registering non-standard size	
in the memory	94
Registering the new user group	. 235
Releasing print job errors	. 287
Remaining paper level	41
Replace toner bag symbol	. 309
Replace toner cartridge symbol	. 302
Reproduction ratio	
Reversing Automatic Document Feeder	
	384
RGB adjustment	. 142
Right margin	
Rotate sort110,	

### S

Saddle stitch	
Available conditions	.120
Saddle stitch	348
Saddle Stitch Finisher 110,	386
Saddle stitch tray	
Saddle Stitch Finisher	35
SADF	
SCAN button	
Scan log	.283
Scanning area	33
Scanning the next originals during copying	
(Auto job start)	82
Send log	
Setting copy paper	
Setting letters	
Setting originals	68
SETTINGS button	
Sharpness	. 145
SHEET INSERTION	
Sheet originals	70
Simplex / duplex button	
Single feed mode74,	197
Slit glass cleaner	33
Sort copying 110,	112
Specifications	
e-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c	. 380
Options	.384
Specifying both original size and	
copy size separately	.106
Staple sort	116
Stapler 344, 348, 350, 354,	355
START button	38
STOP button	38
Stopping the copying operation	81
Storage of colour copies	28
Storing documents in e-Filing	.211
Sub-tray	
Switching colour mode	. 103

# т

Template       228         TEMPLATE button       37         Test printing       218         The       199         TIME STAMP       186         Toner bag       33, 309         TOP BLANK       180         TOP COPIED       180         TOP COPIED BACK BLANK       180         Top margin       157         Touch panel       32, 38, 41         Touch panel contrast adjustment volume       33         Touch-buttons       41
Touch-buttons41
Tray111

Trimming Troubleshooting	. 173
Display does not change when buttons	
or icons are pressed	. 375
Equipment does not start	. 375
Functions cannot be set	
Image density is too high	. 376
Image density is too low	
Paper jamming occurs frequently	
Turning power off (Shutdown)	
Turning power on	45
Twin colour copy	
Type of finishing mode	. 110

### U

Upper cover	111
USB terminal (4-pin)	
Useful template	228
User box	202, 204
USER FUNCTIONS button	37
User group	237, 253
User management	47, 262

### W

Warning
<b>X</b> XY ZOOM178
Y Yellow toner cartridge
Z Zoom buttons

Printed in China FC-2500C/3500C/3510C OME06000300 MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL COLOUR SYSTEMS Operator's Manual for Basic Functions

# C-STUDIO2500c/3500c/3510c

# TOSHIBA TEC CORPORATION

2-17-2, HIGASHIGOTANDA, SHINAGAWA-KU, TOKYO, 141-8664, JAPAN

